INSTRUCTIONS

AND

REGULATIONS

FOR THE

FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENTS

OF THE

CAVALRY.

PRINTED FOR THE WAR-OFFICE,

BY T. EGERTON, AT THE MILITARY LIBRARY,

NEAR WHITEHALL.

1803.

Adjutant General's Office,
17th June, 1796.

THE following Instructions and Regulations, for the Formation and Movements of Cavalry, are, by his MAJESTY's Command, to be strictly observed and practised by the Cavalry Corps in general, in his Majesty's Service, till further Orders.

By Command of Field Marshal,

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS, THE DUKE OF YORK.

WM FAWCETT,
ADJUTANT GENERAL.

Adjutant General's Office,
April, 1797.

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS is pleased to direct further, that every Officer of Cavalry shall be provided with a Copy of these Regulations, and the Commanding Officers of Corps are to take Care that this order be duly observed.

WM FAWCETT,
ADJUTANT GENERAL.

CONTENTS.

Sect.			Page.
1.	Formation	of the troop —	4
2.		of the squadron —	6
3.	The squadron	takes order —	10
4.		takes close order —	10

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES REGULATING MOVEMENTS.

5.	*Passaging and wheeling back* —	13
6.	*Dressing* —	14
7.	*Marching in front* —	16
8.	*Wheeling* —	19
9.	*Filing* —	25
10.	*Inclining* —	27
11.	*Pace* —	29
12.	*Of the charge or attack* —	31
13.	*Commands* —	35
14.	*Movements* —	40
15.	*Taking lines of march and formation* —	43
16.	*Breaking*	

Sect. Page
16. *Breaking and forming squadrons* — 48
17. *Open column in general* — 57
18. *March in line* — — 69

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES THAT REGULATE CHANGES OF POSITION, AND FORMATIONS OF THE SQUADRON AND REGIMENT.

19. *General modes of changing position* — 73
20. *Changes of position of a regiment* — 76
21. *General modes of formation* — 79
22. *General changes of position* — 80
23. *General rules in changing position* — 81

OPEN COLUMN.

24. *The regiment* — *wheels forward into open column* — 86
25. *The regiment* — *wheels backward into open column* — 87
26. *March to the flank in open column* — 89
27. *Change of direction* — *on a moveable pivot* 90
28. *Change of direction* — *on a fixed pivot* — 91
29. *Change of direction* — *on the reverse flank* 92
30. *Change of direction* — *on the pivot flank* 93
31. *Wheel in column of divisions of unequal strength* 94
32. *Prolonging the line in open column* — 95
33. *Halt of the open column* — 96
34. *March of rear divisions of a column into a new direction* — — 96

35. *Wheel*

Sect.			Page
35.	*Wheel of the column into line*	—	98
36.	*OpenColumn formed*	*behind a placed flanked division*	100
37.		*before a placed flanked division*	103
38.		*before and behind a central division* —	104
39.	*Open column of the line formed on a flank or central division*	—	106
40.	*OpenColumn*	*changes position to a flank*	107
41.		*enters a line at its head point*	111
42.		*enters a line at its rear point*	112
43.		*enters a line at its central point*	114
44.	*Open column enters a line by diagonal march of its divisions*	—	115

COUNTER MARCH.

45.	*Of each division*	— —	118
46.	*Of the divisions of the column from rear to front successively*	—	119
47.	*Of the column, from rear to front, by divisions passing through each other*	—	123

CHANGES OF POSITION.

Sect.			Page
48.	Open column	changes position on a fixed division —	124
49.		changes position on a distant point —	127
50.		forms line by divisions passing beyond each other -	127
51.		forms line facing to its rear	129
52.		forms line by wheels to its reverse flank —	129
53.	Countermarch of squadron, regiment or line		131
54.	Diminishing or encreasing the front of the column of march —		134

CLOSE COLUMN.

55.	Close column formed from line —		143
56.	The regiment forms close column —		144
57.	March of column	to a flank —	149
58.		to the front —	151
59.	Change of direction in column —		151
60.	Countermarch of the divisions of the column		153
61.	Deployment of column of half squadrons into line		156
62.	Column of half squadron forms columns of squadrons — —		162
63.	Deployment of column of squadrons into line		163
64.	Oblique deployment of close column into line		166
65.	Line formed from column, in the prolongation of its flank — —		167
66.	Column at half distance forms line to its front		168

ECHELLON.

Sect.		Page
67.	*Wheel of divisions of the regiment into oblique echellon* — —	171
68.	*March in oblique echellon* —	173
69.	*Wheel back into parallel line* —	175
70.	*March up into oblique line* —	176
71.	*Change of position forward or backward, on a flank or central division* —	177
72.	*Change of position on a distant point* —	185
73.	*March of direct echellon to the front, and formation in line* —	186
74.	*General changes of position of a line* —	191
75.	*Taking up lines of march and formation*	196
76.	*Open column enters, marches, and forms on an alignement* — —	198
77.	*Entry of the rear regiments of a column into an alignement, on which the front ones have halted* — —	200
78.	*Changes of position on a fixed flank division* —	202
79.	*Changes of position on a fixed central division*	202
80.	*Changes of position on a moving central division*	203

OF THE LINE.

OPEN COLUMN.

Sect. Page

81. *Change of position by the rear regiments of a column marching directly to their new situation* — — 206

82. *Formation in line on detached adjutants, from assembly in column, or in mass* — 216

CLOSE COLUMN.

83. *From column of march, to form close column and line* — — 217

84. *Oblique deployments* — 222

85. *Several columns formed from the same line* 223

86. *Several columns formed in one line* 224

87. *Two columns exchange places* — 224

88. *Two columns form in one line* — 225

89. *Two columns form in two lines* — 226

ECHELLON.

90. *Oblique position taken by the echellon march* 229

91. *When from an advance obliquely in echellon, the line changes position inwards* — 230

92. *When echellons advance direct, from flank of the line to the front* — 231

93. *When a line formed on enemy's flank, attacks in echellon* — 233

94. *When a line formed oblique to an enemy attacks from a flank* — 233

95. *Echellon taken from column, or from a position parallel or oblique with respect to the enemy* — — 235

96. *Advance*

Sect. Page

THE LINE.

96. *Advance in Line* — 239
97. *Retreat in Line, and paſſage of obſtacles in line* 245
98. *Chequered retreat of the line* — 252
99. *When the line retires by alternate ſquadrons, or half ſquadrons, in two lines* — 253
100. *Inverſion of the line* — 254
101. *When the commander of a line changes its poſition to a flank, without the help of advanced objects* — 256
102. *Attack of cavalry in front and flank* — 259

SECOND LINE.

103. *Two lines change poſition on a central point of the firſt line* — 269
104. *Two lines change poſition forward on a flank of the firſt line* — — 271
105. *Two lines change poſition backward on a flank of the firſt line* — 271
106. *Two lines wheel into column, march to a flank, change direction, and take up a new poſition* — 272
107. *Paſſage of lines* — 275
108. *The column of route or march* — 277

Evolutions — — 287
When the regiment is to diſmount — 308
When the regiment is to mount — 308

Inſpection

Page
Inſpection or review of a regiment of cavalry 310
Additional Inſtructions, 1ſt January, 1799 347
Skirmiſhing — — 353
Advanced guards — — 357
Advanced poſts — — 359
Patroles — — 362
Trumpet and bugle horn ſoundings — 368

The appendix of the former editions, and the inſtructions of January, 1799, make a part of this edition: which is alſo enlarged with ſome directions for the *paſſage of obſtacles*, when marching in line (page 455)---*for ſkirmiſhing*---*conduct of advanced guards*---*advanced poſts* and *patroles* (page 353).

The following alterations are ordered in this edition:——When the ſquadron wheels to either flank (*ranks by threes*), the ſtandard and his coverer are *in* the two center ranks of ſix men, and not between thoſe ranks, as expreſſed in S. 16.——In the evolutions, the

the ſquadron is ordered, inſtead of filing to front or rear from the flanks of ſquadrons, to make ſuch filings from the ſame flank of half ſquadrons—At a review or inſpection, the regiment marches paſt by half ſquadrons, and not by ſquadrons. Such other minute alterations as may be prescribed by this edition, are alſo to be obſerved.

The words of command given by leaders of ſquadrons, and which firſt come from thoſe of the line and of regiments, are marked on the margin in Capitals.

The words of command given by leaders of half ſquadrons, diviſions, or ſubdiviſions, are marked on the margin in *Italics*.

Although *diviſion* is underſtood in general to expreſs the fourth part of a ſquadron, yet it is often applied to whatever part of a ſquadron at that time compoſes the front of a column.

INSTRUCTIONS

TO BE OBSERVED FOR THE

FORMATION AND MOVEMENTS

OF THE

CAVALRY.

1799.

THE SQUADRONS of CAVALRY are compoſed each of two Troops.

REGIMENTS are compoſed of two, three, or more ſquadrons.

A LINE is compoſed of two or more regiments.

The *troop* and the *ſquadron* are formed two deep.

Tellings off in ſquadron.

Each SQUADRON is to be told off—by

Half ſquadrons
Four diviſions.
Eight ſub-diviſions.
Ranks by three's.
Files, right and left.

Half ſquadrons

Half ſquadrons; is the ſquadron divided in two equal parts, in the center of which is the ſtandard.

Diviſions.

Four, or diviſions; is each half ſquadron divided in two equal parts; but ſo that the center half ſhall ſub-divide exactly by three.

Sub-diviſions.

Eight, or ſub-diviſions; is each fourth diviſion divided in two equal parts, for the purpoſe of marching on a ſmall front; but in this caſe the ſub-diviſion muſt not be leſs than ſix files, otherwiſe the ſquadron will open out.

Ranks by three's.

Ranks by three's; is each half ſquadron told off by three's, beginning at the ſtandard (excluſive) and telling off to each flank of the ſquadron: this telling is calculated for the retreat of the ſquadron, by each rank independently wheeling to the right about by three's; alſo for a flank march of the ſquadron, ſix men in front, by each rank wheeling to the flank by three's and moving on.---The deployments from cloſe column into line, and from line into cloſe column, are alſo made ranks by three's---and it is the only

rank

rank wheeling (with that by two's) eſſential to the movements of the ſquadron.

Files, right and left; is each half ſquadron told off by alternate files, beginning at the ſtandard) excluſive) and proceeding to each flank of the ſquadron. This telling off is calculated for the reining back, and doubling alternate files in order to diſmount; alſo for a flank march of the ſquadron, four men in front, by each rank wheeling up to the flank by two's and moving on. Files.

The *diviſions of ranks* ariſe of courſe out of thoſe of the ſquadron—they are *half ranks, quarter ranks, eighths of ranks.* Ranks may be occaſionally told off by *four's*, for purpoſes of parade. Diviſions of ranks.

The *diſtances of ranks* are taken from the head of the rear rank horſe to the tail of the front one—Thoſe eſſential are two: Diſtances of ranks.

Cloſe order; half the length of a horſe (about three and a half feet) ſufficient for the wheeling of ranks, by three's; it is the conſtant and eſſential diſtance of formation and movement; all other diſtances are only occaſional exceptions from it, uſed in exerciſe and ſituations of parade. Cloſe order.

Order; a diſtance equal to one third of the ſquadron taken in diſmounting and in parade. Order.

Other diſtances of exerciſe may be taken when ſo required by explanatory commands.

Diſtance of files.

Looſe files.

The *diſtance of files*, at which the regiment forms and moves, is ſix inches from boot-top to boot-top, being calculated for the gallop as well as the walk of the ſquadron.

Cloſe files.

Cloſe files; is the diſtance taken before diſmounting, when each man's boot-top touches, but without preſſing.

Open files.

Open files; the full breadth of a horſe from boot-top to boot-top; it is the diſtance left when from cloſe files the left files rein back to diſmount, and is a diſtance at which recruits and horſes muſt be much exerciſed.

S. 1. *Formation of the Troop.*

Formation of the troop.

Each *troop* forms on its own troop parade, in a rank intire, and ſized according to the ſize roll. The inſpection is then made according to the form ordered.

The

The commanding *officer* tells off the rear rank; forms two deep at close order, by filing or by reining back and passaging; and counter marches the ranks if necessary, according to the place of the troop in squadron. He places an officer on each flank of the front rank, and covers him by a corporal; he tells the troop off in two divisions, and places a serjeant on the right of the left division, covered also by a corporal. He also tells off by files, right and left; the quarter-master is in the rear of the center, the trumpeter is on his right, and the farrier on his left, each the length of a horse distant; the remaining serjeants are also in the rear. Telling off the troop.

The *troop*, thus formed, is marched, either a division in front; or ranks by two's (four men in front); or by file (two men in front) if it is necessary, to the rendezvous of the squadron, where it is again formed and halted.

Of the two *troops* that compose the squadron, the right one is sized from left to right, and the left one from right to left; that the largest men and horses may be in the center of the squadron; and sizing well must not be neglected. Sizing the troop and squadron

If the *troop* is to act singly, and not to join in squadron, it will then be additionally told off by ranks by three's, and also by sub-divisions, if it be sufficiently strong to admit of it.

S. 2. *Formation of the Squadron.*

Formation of the ſquadron.

When the *ſquadron* is to be formed, the two troops that compoſe it cloſe in to each other—the officers then move out, and form in a rank advanced two horſes length, fronting to their troops. The ſerjeants and covering corporals rein back, and dreſs with the quarter-maſter in the rear.

Completing the files, and poſting officers.

The commanding *officer* of the ſquadron compleats the files, and equalizes the troops, by ſhifting a file or two if neceſſary. The officers are then ordered to their poſt in ſquadron, viz. one in the center for the ſtandard, and one on each flank of the front rank; each of theſe three is covered by a corporal. The other officers place themſelves in the rear as *ſerrefiles*, at two horſes length diſtant from the rear rank.

Telling off the ſquadron.

The commanding officer then tells off the ſquadron—by two, or *half ſquadrons*—by four or *diviſions*, and places a ſerjeant, covered by a corporal or dragoon, on the right of each of the four diviſions, except the right one. He then tells off each half ſquadron by ranks, by *three's*, and each half ſquadron by alternate *files*, right and left, beginning from the ſtandard (excluſive) and telling off to each flank: The non-commiſſioned officers to be included in theſe tellings off, and it is to be obſerved that the file on the right of the ſtandard is to be told a left file, and that on the left of the ſtandard, a right file, in order to favour the movements of ranks by two's.

Where

Where the ſtrength of the ſquadron admits of each *diviſion* being told off exactly into *three's*, it is an eligible circumſtance; but at any rate care muſt be taken that the *center* diviſions divide exactly by *three's*, (and their flank ſerjeants be poſted accordingly) although the flank ones do not, and are thereby a file or two ſtronger or weaker. If there is at laſt a two or a four on either flank, it muſt ſo remain, as in the moſt advantageous ſituation for aiding the wheels.

The ſquadron is alſo told off in ſub-diviſions, each being the half of a diviſion.

When the *ſquadron is formed*, the officers and non-commiſſioned officers are thus placed.

Officers and non-commiſſioned officers poſted in ſquadron.

Commanding officer	Advanced a horſe's length before the ſtandard.
Two officers —	One on each flank of the front rank, covered by a corporal.
One officer	Carrying the ſtandard in the center of the front rank, covered by a corporal.
Three ſerjeants	One on the right of the front rank of each of the four *diviſions*, except the right one; and each covered by a corporal or dragoon.

Poſt of ſupernumeraries or ſerrefiles.

The ſupernumerary or *ſerrefile* officers, and ſerjeants, the quarter-maſters and trumpeters are in the rear of their

their troops, divided in a line, at two horſes diſtance from the rear rank, and their buſineſs is to attend to the movements of the ſquadron, and particularly to the good behaviour of the rear-rank. Farriers are behind ferrefiles a horſe's length.

Replacing of officers, &c.

By this diſtribution, allowance is made for ſick and abſent officers, and non-commiſſioned officers; and if a ſufficient number of any rank is not preſent, then ſerjeants replace officers, corporals replace ſerjeants, and intelligent men replace corporals.

Quarter Maſter.

The eſſential poſt of the *quarter maſters* is always in the rear of the ſquadron when in line; but in changes of poſition in column, they may, when neceſſary, be ordered to conduct pivots of diviſions; and when the line is forming or dreſſing in a given direction, they may be uſefully employed in giving true points in that line to their reſpective regiments.

Officers or ſerjeants in the ranks.

Such *officers* or *ſerjeants*, and their coverers (except the ſtandard) as are on the flanks, or are in the ranks, are told off as files and as flank-men of diviſions, and on all occaſions *file* or *wheel* with them; except when the ranks wheel by three's or by two's, then the ſtandard, together with the flank officers, and thoſe that cover them, *turn* ſingly about, each man on his ground, and retain the ſame relative place in the ſquadron, whether going to the front, or rear, or flanks.

Coverers of officers and ſerjeants.

When any of thoſe *officers* or *ſerjeants* ſhift from their proper places, to conduct pivots, &c. as here-

after

after directed, their coverers occupy such place during their absence, and on their return again resign it. When such officers or serjeants, without shifting, naturally become pivot leaders, their coverers place themselves behind the third file of the division their leaders conduct; because pivot leaders of divisions are never in column to be covered, but each to remain single on the flank of the front rank of his division, that he may thereby be the more conspicuous, and that those several leaders may the more accurately and easily cover each other, when the march is in a straight alignement; or when the column is halted in such alignement, and is to form the line by the wheel up of its divisions to its proper flank.

General circumstances of formation.

In order to preserve each *troop* entire, it is not material, if one division is a file stronger than another; and in general, the flank divisions will be strongest from the addition of Officers. Officers will be posted with their troops as much as possible. Corporals not wanted to mark the divisions, or to cover officers and serjeants, will be in the ranks according to their size, or placed on the outward flank file of their troops. Farriers are considered as detached, in all situations of manœuvre.

All these *general* circumstances of formation apply and take place, whether the squadron is composed of two or more troops, and whether the troops are more or less strong.

S. 3. *When the Squadron takes Order.*

When the ſquadron takes order.

The SQUADRON being formed at *cloſe order*, if (parade) *order* is to be taken, the commanding officer gives the word, REAR RANK TAKE ORDER! and the diſtance is immediately aſcertained by an officer or non-commiſſioned officer of the rear, and behind which ever flank the dreſſing is to. At the word, MARCH! the rank reins back to its proper diſtance; the ſtandard, as alſo all the officers, move out briſkly a horſe's length, and divide themſelves in front of their own troops and of the ſquadron, at equal diſtances: the whole are dreſſed to a flank, and the commanding officer is a horſe's length in front of the ſtandard. The trumpeters move up on each flank of the front rank, and the quarter maſters and farriers remain in the rear.

S. 4. *When the Squadron takes close Order.*

When the ſquadron takes cloſe order.

When from *order* the ſquadron is to take *cloſe order*—The word, TAKE CLOSE ORDER! is a caution. At the word MARCH! the rear rank moves forward to cloſe order, and officers, non-commiſſioned officers, trumpeters, &c. take their poſts as before.

In

In regiment or line, the ſquadrons form with an *interval* betwixt each, equal to one-third of their actual front; nor is there to be any additional interval in a line betwixt regiments, or brigades. Intervals of ſquadrons.

Wheelings, filings, formings, and in general, the movements of manœuvre, and changes of ſituation of the ſquadron and regiment, are made at a quick and vigorous pace, determined by the commands that are at the time given——But in operations that ariſe, and are required from the nature of a long march, all violent and unneceſſary exertions are as much as poſſible to be avoided, and in proportion to the extent of the body, muſt circumſpection and attention increaſe.

Diviſion is often uſed as a general word for whatever part of a ſquadron the front of a column may at the time be compoſed of. General obſervations.

The ſquadron never breaks into *diviſions* of three's or two's. When the word three's, or two's, is made uſe of, it always means, *ranks* by three's or two's.

The half wheel, the quarter wheel, the eighth wheel of diviſions, means their wheeling the *half*, *quarter*, or *eighth* of the quarter circle.

When

When three's wheel *about*, it is always to the right about, unleſs otherwiſe expreſsly ordered.

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES, regulating the MOVEMENTS of the SQUADRON, REGIMENT, or LINE.

The ſame GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES muſt govern and determine the movements of the ſquadron, regiment, or line. Thoſe of the ſmaller bodies are therefore deduced, and ariſe from ſuch as are required in, and are eſſential to, the operations of the greater body.

General movements of the ſquadron.

All the VARIOUS movements of the ſquadron, or larger body, are compounded of —— *Paſſaging and reining back—Dreſſing—Marching in front—Wheeling—Filing—Inclining.*

S. 5. *Passaging and reining back.*

Paſſaging and reining back are leſſons of the manage, and neceſſary in opening or cloſing of *ranks, files,* or *intervals* of ſquadrons.

Paſſaging. When ground is to be taken to the flank by paſſaging, the whole body moves at the word, To THE—PASS! and halts, at the word, HALT! and therefore ſucceſſive movement of files is not to be permitted, nor will it be attempted if the command is given in a ſtrong and decided tone.

Reining back. In reining back of bodies or ranks, the whole look to the hand to which they ought to form or dreſs; the movement is never to be hurried: to be made in order, and the horſes to be kept ſtraight.

S. 6. *Dressing.*

DRESSING is occasional to right, center, or left, as ordered.

Dressing. The Squadron, and all bodies till otherwise ordered,

- *Dress* — To the hand to which they form.
- *March* — To the hand to which they were dressed when halted.
- *Halt* — To the hand to which they were dressed in marching.

When the squadron or line is halted, *dressing* is generally ordered to the right.

When the entire squadron moves in line, or wheels, *dressing* is to the standard in the center.

When a column of entire squadrons marches in an alignement in order to wheel up and form line, *dressing* and *covering*, as in other similar columns, is to the pivot flank.

Dressing, or placing a rank or number of men in a perfect straight line, is attained by a twofold operation. The first is, that the men, by being in their persons

square

ſquare, (and their horſes alſo) and looking towards the flank man, endeavour of themſelves to conform to and prolong the intended line, which he and others ſucceſſively take up. The ſecond is, that during this operation, an officer of each forming diviſion, being at that fixed flank point, and either having a given object to the other hand aſcertained beforehand, or from his general knowledge of the general direction that ſhould be taken, by a glance of the eye, aſſuming ſome diſtant point in it for himſelf: he from the ſtanding flank corrects, and lines upon ſuch point, the man and men next to him, and ſucceſſively the whole of the body or diviſion who are then looking towards him.

Dreſſing, and its correction, are therefore to be always underſtood as a progreſſive operation. The firſt, ſecond, third files next the fixed flank, being firſt truly placed, the others then rapidly and ſucceſſively conform to them, under the controul of the officer on that flank, who knows the direction the whole ſhould ſtand in.

In *dreſſing*, the horſes muſt ſtand ſtraight to the front, and the men's bodies muſt be ſquare, each juſt caſting his eye along his next man's face, but without turning his head. The men muſt be uniformly placed on horſeback, for on this ſquareneſs of man and horſe both dreſſing and movement muſt eſſentially depend.

In *dreſſing*, when halted, a ſmall turn of the head may be neceſſary, and is allowed in order to facilitate it.

it. When the word, DRESS! is alone given, in line or column, it means to the hand to which the troops are then looking: but when eyes are at the ſame time to be turned to a new point, in order to dreſs, it ſhould be ſo expreſſed by the addition of *Right*, *center*, or *left*. Whenever the word *Halt*, *dreſs!* is given by an officer to his diviſion, it always implies that the men are looking, or are to look to ſuch officer, who is then himſelf on the pivot flank of his diviſion.

All *dreſſing* is to be made with as much alacrity of officer and ſoldier as poſſible, and the dreſſer of each body, as he accompliſhes the operation, will give a caution *Front!* that heads may then be replaced and remain ſquare to the front. If the body to be dreſſed is extenſive, the dreſſer muſt juſtly place one diviſion before he proceeds on that which is beyond it.

Every *dreſſer* of a body in a given line, muſt in his own perſon be placed on that line, while he is directing ſuch operation.

S. 7. *Marching in Front.*

Marching in line.

The SQUADRON being ſuppoſe halted, and dreſſed to a flank, the *leader* muſt take care that he is exactly placed before the ſtandard, and ſquare with reſpect to the front of the ſquadron, or the general line,

line. In this poſition, from habit, and with a glance of the eye, he determines the perpendicular direction which he is to follow, and cannot fail to remark two or more ſmall objects on the ground, which are in the line of this direction. Line of march taken.

The leader gives the word, THE SQUADRON WILL ADVANCE! as a caution——at the word, MARCH! each man caſts his eye to the ſtandard, puts his horſe in motion, and dreſſes with the greateſt exactneſs to the ſtandard, and non-commiſſioned officer that covers it. Advance of the ſquadron.

The attention of the *ſtandard* bearer is to keep a horſe's length from the leader; to follow him exactly and ſcrupulouſly; and ſlacken or quicken his pace according to the words of command, or directions he receives. This muſt be done gradually, and without hurrying or ſpringing forward, which will always occaſion a ſhake in the ſquadron. Attention of ſtandard.

The attention of the reſt of the ſquadron is invariably fixed on the center, that of the front rank on the ſtandard; and that of the rear rank on the non-commiſſioned officer covering it, who gives the diſtance of ranks as ordered. Attention of the ranks.

The diſtance of files is taken and preſerved from the center. This is more immediately the buſineſs of the front rank. The rear rank, at the ſame time that they dreſs to their center man, attend to the diſtance of files, and to the covering their file leaders; but Attention of rear rank.

this without an eye being ever turned from the center on any account.

Squareneſs of man and horſe.

Each man and horſe muſt be placed perfectly ſquare to the front, otherwiſe the ſquadron can never move juſtly; the ranks cannot be dreſſed, or the proper diſtance of files preſerved.

Attention of leaders of ſquadrons.

As the great buſineſs of every leader of a ſquadron is to carry it forward in its exact perpendicular direction, it requires his whole attention. The ſtandard, officers, and ſerrefiles, muſt take care that the ſquadron is dreſſed, and up to its leader, who muſt not be looking back to give ſuch directions, otherwiſe he will undoubtedly ſwerve, and not conduct it with that ſteadineſs, which is ſo eſſential, eſpecially in relative movements, and which depend entirely upon himſelf.

If the ſquadron marches in parade *order*, the line of officers dreſs to the ſtandard, and the reſt of the ſquadron move as before directed.

Alteration of direction.

If a ſmall alteration is to be made in the *direction* of the ſquadron, the leader gradually circles into ſuch new direction, with which the ſquadron complies, by advancing one flank, and retaining the other till the change is effected, and a ſtraight line reſumed: or, according to circumſtances, this intention will be anſwered by a flank wheel of the ſquadron till it is perpendicular to the new direction, when it again advances.

When

When the word, HALT! is given, the whole halt, by the center. The word, DRESS! inſtantaneouſly follows, and the file on each ſide of the ſtandard diligently conforming to the general direction, gives the line to the reſt of the ſquadron, who immediately, if neceſſary, correct the diſtance of files. Halt of the ſquadron.

If the ſquadron is to remain halted, and a greater degree of exactneſs is wiſhed for, at the word EYES RIGHT! the whole look to the right, and the commanding officer from the right, taking his object of dreſſing beyond the left, rectifies any ſmall internal deviation that may then exiſt, and which muſt be very inconſiderable. A ſecond betwixt each word of command ought to anſwer the above purpoſes. Dreſſing the ſquadron.

If one movement is immediately to ſucceed another, a critical dreſſing need not be required, and the ſquadron may remain looking to the center, till the order for marching is again given.

S. 8. *Wheeling.*

WHEELING is one of the moſt eſſential and important operations of the ſquadron, neceſſary in many changes of poſition, and in the formations of column and of the line. Wheeling.

Wheel of the squadron.

When the entire ſquadron is to *wheel*, a *caution* is given to that purport, and to which hand.—At the word MARCH! the front rank of the ſquadron remains dreſſed to the center, the leader fixes his eye and makes his circle on the ſtanding flank man; the ſtandard follows him exactly, and the ſquadron wheels with the ſame uniform front, at ſuch a pace as is requiſite to keep every where dreſſed with the ſtandard.——The rear rank and the ſerrefiles look to the wheeling flank, and incline at the ſame time that they wheel, ſo as always to cover their front leaders.

Attention of ſtandard.

The *ſtandard* muſt take care never to oblige the wheeling man to exceed a moderate gallop, otherwiſe the rear rank, which has ſtill more ground to go over, cannot keep up, the ſquadron will wheel looſe, and in diſorder, and be longer in dreſſing, than if it had come about at a ſlower pace, but cloſe and connected.

Attention of flanks.

The *flanks* muſt always conform to the center, in caſe the leader does not take his ground as exactly as he ought. At any rate the ſtandard is the guide for the pace, and to preſerve the diſtance of files from.

Halt of ſquadron.

The leader muſt take care to time his words, HALT! DRESS! the inſtant before the wheel is completed, otherwiſe an overwheel or reining back will be the conſequence. The whole halt and dreſs by the center.

The

The SQUADRON breaks into column of any of the divisions in which it is told off, by each of those divisions wheeling up the quarter circle. If the body is in motion (as in column) the wheels of the divisions all begin at the word WHEEL! If halted, they are begun at the word MARCH! Divisions of the squadron in column.

In all division wheelings, the whole look to the wheeling hand. In all wheelings, the rear rank must rein back at the standing flank, and incline towards the wheeling hand, in order to cover. Rear rank.

At the word HALT! DRESS! given when the wheel is completed, the whole turn eyes and dress to the standing flank, and remain so till a new direction is given, which will be EYES { right / or / left } to the pivot flank, when necessary. Halt of divisions.

Wheelings of the squadron, or its parts, from the *halt*, are made on the flanks, except those of ranks by three's, which are made on the middle man of each. Wheelings from the halt.

The distances of divisions of the squadron when in column, are taken and preserved from front rank to front rank. Distances in column, after wheeling.

When the squadron is to be formed by the wheeling up of its divisions, there must be no false intervals, and the rear ranks must rein back, and incline, so as Wheel of divisions into squadron.

not to interrupt the front ranks coming up together.

Attention in wheels of divisions.

In division wheelings, the whole keep closed lightly towards the hand they wheel to, and must avoid pressing the pivot man off his ground. The outward flank man looks to his rank, he of course regulates the pace at which the wheel is made, he must not press in on his rank, nor turn his horse's head towards the standing flank; all the horses' heads must be kept rather outwards (for to attempt to bend them inwards, would certainly occasion a crowding on the standing flank) and the croupes lightly closed inwards with the leg. The pivot man of the wheel turns his horse on his fore feet, keeps his ground, and comes gradually round with his rank.

Wheels of divisions made on a halted, or on a moveable pivot.

Wheels of divisions of the squadron or line, are made on a HALTED, or on a MOVEABLE PIVOT. When on a *halted* pivot, they are made from line into column, or from column into line: and also generally by the column of manœuvre or march, when moving on a considerable front, and when the wheel by which its direction is to be changed, approaches to or exceeds the quarter circle. When on a *moveable* pivot, they are generally used and ordered when the front of the column is small, and its path winding and changeable.

On a halted pivot.

Although on the completion of the wheel in column, on a halted pivot, the pause made after the *Halt!*

Halt! Dreſs! gives time in large fronts for exact dreſſing before the *March!* is reſumed, yet in ſmall ones, where that pauſe is ſhort, there is no time for ſuch operation; the attention to, and preſervation of the true diſtance, being then the material object.—Whenever the wheel made is leſs than the quarter circle, the pauſe after the wheel will be conſiderable; ſhould the wheel be greater than the quarter circle, it muſt be accelerated, otherwiſe more than one diviſion will be arrived and arreſted at the wheeling point.

On a moveable pivot.

When wheels or changes of direction of bodies in column, are made on a MOVEABLE pivot, both flanks are kept in motion, the *pivot* one always deſcribing part of a circle, and the *reverſe* flank, and intermediate men of the diviſion, by a compound of inclining and wheeling, conforming to the pivot movement.

Wheel made to the pivot hand and moveable.

When the change is to be made to the PIVOT hand (and the whole being in motion) the leader of the head diviſion, when at the diſtance of twenty or thirty yards from the point of interſection of the old and new direction, will give the word { right / or / left } *Shoulder forward!* which is a caution for each man to give a ſmall turn of his horſe TOWARDS the pivot hand, and the leader himſelf carefully preſerving the rate of march, without the leaſt alteration of pace, will in his

own perſon begin to circle BEFORE the line, from the old, ſo as to enter the new direction twenty or thirty yards from the point of interſection, which he in this caſe leaves at ſome ſmall diſtance WITHIN his pivot hand—when this is effected (the reſt of his diviſion having during the tranſition, and on the principle of gradual dreſſing, conformed to the direction he is giving them) he will give the word *Forward!* for the diviſion to purſue the ſtraight line——the leader of the ſecond, and of every other diviſion, when he arrives at the ground on which the firſt began to wheel, will in the ſame manner follow his exact tract, always preſerving his proper diſtance from him.

Wheel made to the reverſe hand, and moveable.

When the change is to be made to the REVERSE hand, the pivot leader having arrived as before at the ſpot where he gives his word { right / or / left } *Shoulder forward!* for each man to give a ſmall turn of his horſe's head FROM the pivot hand; will begin in his own perſon to circle BEHIND the line from the old, ſo as to enter the new direction twenty or thirty yards from the point of interſection, which in this caſe he leaves at ſome ſmall diſtance WITHOUT his pivot hand. The reſt of his diviſion, by giving way, having gradually conformed to his movement, he will at the proper inſtant order *forward!* and reſume a ſtraight line.

During the change to either hand, the whole continue looking to the pivot flank, which never alters the

rate

rate of the then march; but the reverse flank is in the one case obliged to slacken, and in the other to quicken its movement.

In this manner, without the constraint of formal wheels, a column, when not confined on its flanks, may be conducted in all kinds of winding and changeable directions; for if the changes be made gradual, and circling, and that the pivot leaders pursue their proper path at the same uniform equal pace, the true distances of divisions will be preserved, which is the great regulating object on this occasion, and to which every other consideration must give way. Change in direction of columns.

S. 9. *Filing.*

Filing is an operation of the squadron, of use in broken or embarrassed ground, which will not allow of movements on a greater front. It is a situation in which horses move free and without confinement, but in which the squadron or its parts lengthen out, and take up much more ground than what they stand on in line, and is therefore to be had recourse to only from necessity. Filings.

All horses heads are instantly to be turned at the command to *File!* ready to move off without loss of distance. Attentions in filing.

diſtance. The leaders of files go off ſhort and quick in their ordered direction, and are followed cloſe by each man as it comes to his turn, ſo as to leave no unneceſſary interval from one to another, and inſtantly to get off the ground. After being once in file, a diſtance of a yard from head to tail may be taken, ſo as to trot or gallop the eaſier if required. Every alteration of pace ought to be made as much as poſſible by the whole file at once; if this is not obſerved, a crowding and ſtop in the rear will always attend ſuch alteration.

Diſtances when in file.

The file leaders preſerve ſuch diſtances as they ought from which ever hand they are to dreſs to, and the followers of each file are only attentive to cover, and be regulated by their proper file leaders. In file the rear rank dreſſes by and is regulated by its front rank.

Attentions in forming.

In forming, each man muſt come up in file to his place, and by no means move up to his leader, till that leader has formed to which ever hand the file is forming to—The whole muſt follow the exact tract of the firſt leader, and come up one by one into their reſpective places in ſquadron.

General neceſſary filings.

Filings that may be required from the ſquadron, are——Filing from either or both flanks to front, flank, or rear——Filing from the center of the ſquadron to the front or to the flank——Filing ſingle men by ranks, or by front and rear rank men alternately, from either flank of the ſquadron.

In

In the filings of the ſquadron, the ſerrefiles take their place in the rear of the files, unleſs the ground will allow them to remain on the flank of the rear rank; but their general and proper poſition is in the rear of the files, becauſe filing is in general an operation of neceſſity, which the nature of the ground requires. Serrefiles in filing.

In all formings from file, the leaders of ranks inſtantly cover each other, take the ordered front, and halt——The file forms to the *front*, by moving up and cloſing to its leaders. The file forms to the *rear*, by doubling round its leaders, who have themſelves turned and faced. The file forms to its *proper* flank, by turning and cloſing in to its leaders.—The file forms to its *reverſe* flank, by paſſing, turning, and ſucceſſively cloſing to its leaders.——In formations from file, the whole, till otherwiſe ordered, dreſs to the hand to which the ſquadron or diviſion forms. Forming from file.

S. 10. *Inclining.*

Inclining. Inclining is a movement, by which the ſquadron is carried on in a parallel direction, at the ſame time that it is gaining ground to the flank—It is of great uſe in the marching of the line in front, to correct any irregularities that may happen. It is equivalent

lent to the oblique marching of the infantry. It enables to gain the enemy's flank without expoſing your own, or without wheeling or altering the parallel front of the ſquadron.

At the order to INCLINE! each man makes a half face on his horſe's fore feet, by which means each will appear to be half a head behind his flank leader; and the whole will look to the hand to which they are to incline.

The leading officer on the flank, with a glance of his eye, aſcertaining his points, marches ſteadily upon them, at whatever pace is ordered. Every other man in the ſquadron moves in ſo many parallel lines, with reſpect to him, and preſerves the ſame uniformity of front and files, as when he firſt turned his horſe's head.

Great care is to be taken that the whole move at the ſame pace, and quicken or ſlacken together, as ordered. If the flank that follows is too forward, the center will be crowded; if it is too backward, the ſquadron will be too much in file.

At no time of the incline ought the former front of the ſquadron or diſtance of files to be altered—But whenever the word FRONT! is given, the ſquadron (by each man at the ſame inſtant turning his horſe) ſhould be formed in a direction perfectly parallel to its former front, and ready to dreſs and move on by the ſtandard.

In

In the Incline, the rear rank moves in the ſame manner, and is of courſe regulated by the front rank, which it takes care to conform to.

The diſtance of files at ſix inches, allows the ſquadron to incline in perfect order, while its new direction does not paſs an angle of 34° with reſpect to its former one, and at this angle it will be underſtood always to incline, unleſs it ſhould be required to gain as much or more ground to the flank as to the front: in that caſe, the ſquadron muſt either wheel up, and march upon the flank point, or it will fall more or leſs into file, according to the degree of obliquity required, by moving each horſe retired, half neck, or head to boot, &c. &c.

As this is generally intended for a briſk movement of the ſquadron, either at a trot or gallop, no horſe is to croſs his legs or paſſage in inclining, but each is to move in a ſtraight line.

S. 11. *Pace.*

The paces of Cavalry cannot be regulated by length of ſtep and numbers, in a minute, as thoſe of the infantry are, nor is it ſo material.

The

The *Walk!* *Trot!* and *Gallop!* are the three natural paces, and of each of theſe there are different degrees of quickneſs; but at which ever of them the ſquadron is conducted, the ſloweſt moving horſe at that pace muſt be attended to, otherwiſe different kinds of motions will exiſt at the ſame time in the ſquadron, and tend to diſunite it. Horſes deficient in any of thoſe paces, or not broken to a ſteadineſs in each of them, are improper for the ſquadron.

Though ſingle horſes or ſmall bodies may inſtantaneouſly change from one pace to another; yet a ſquadron or a number of bodies will move with more eaſe and uniformity, when ſuch tranſitions are made gradually through the different paces, as from a *Walk* to a *Slow Trot! Quick Trot! Slow Gallop! Quick Gallop!* and vice verſa: each of theſe by its ſeparate word of command, which may follow as quickly as is found neceſſary.

All alterations of pace muſt be made as much as poſſible at the ſame inſtant, by each ſeparate body that compoſes a line or column.

Though in ſlow movements of the line or ſquadron, and on a march, the *Walk!* is the common pace uſed, yet, in general, all changes of poſition and manœuvres ſhould be made at the *Trot* or *Gallop*, according to circumſtances, beginning gently to avoid hurry, and ending gently to avoid confuſion in forming. The intermediate times of ſuch movement may be conducted with rapidity, and much depends on the eye of the officer, and well timing the words of command.

Great

Great bodies, consistent with perfect order, cannot move with the same degree of rapidity as smaller ones, and therefore an allowance proportionable to their extent must be made in conducting them, whether in line or column, and this only the eye, practice, and attention can determine.

S. 12. *Of the Charge or Attack.*

The great force of Cavalry is more in the offensive than the defensive: therefore the attack is its principal object.

All the different movements of the squadron should tend to place it in the most advantageous situation to attack the enemy.——The charge is that attack made with the greatest velocity and regularity possible, to break the order of the opposite enemy, which will always ensure his defeat.

When the squadron is to charge, the leader gives the words of command.—MARCH!---TROT!---GALLOP!---CHARGE!---HALT!---and FORM!

It depends on the commanding officer to lead at such a pace as that the flanks and rear rank may always keep

keep up.——Every alteration of pace muſt be made at the ſame inſtant by the whole ſquadron.

Whatever diſtance the ſquadron has to go over, it may move at a briſk trot till within two hundred and fifty yards of the enemy, and then gallop.—The word CHARGE! is given when within eighty yards, and the gallop encreaſed as much as the body can bear in good order.—Any attempt to cloſe the files at the inſtant of the charge, would only increaſe the intervals in a line, and tend to impede the free movement of each horſe, who at no time requires to be more independent than when galloping at his utmoſt exertion, and every rub to right or left diminiſhes that effort in a degree.

At the inſtant of the ſhock, the body muſt be well back; the horſe not reſtrained by the bitt, but determined forward by the ſpur: riſing in the ſtirrups, and pointing the ſword, will always occaſion a ſhake in the ſquadron; it will naturally be done when neceſſary.

It is in the uniform velocity of the ſquadron, that its effect conſiſts; the ſpur as much as the ſword tends to overſet an oppoſite enemy; when the one has nearly accompliſhed this end, the other may compleat it.

In every part of the charge and in quick movement, the ſtandard muſt be very exact in following the leader; and the men particularly attentive in keeping up to, and dreſſing to their ſtandard. They will have

their

their horſes in hand, and perfectly ſquare to the front, their heads well up, which will keep them under command.—Men muſt remain firm in their ſaddles; an unſteady man will always make a horſe ſo; one ſuch will interfere with the movement and effect of a whole ſquadron.

When the ſhock of the ſquadron has broken the order of the oppoſite enemy, part may be ordered to purſue and keep up the advantage; but its great object is inſtantly to rally and to renew its efforts in a body, either to the front, or by wheeling to take other ſquadrons in flank.

If the ſquadron fails in its attack, and is itſelf put in diſorder or confuſion, it muſt retire as well as it can, to make way for thoſe that ſupport it, and muſt rally as ſoon as poſſible under the protection of the others.

A ſquadron ſhould never be ſo much hurried, as to bring up the horſes blown to the charge, and this will much depend on circumſtances and the order they are in.

In the real charge, where reſiſtance is met with, the halt will be gradual; but in exerciſe, to ſhow the readineſs of man and horſe, it is frequently made from the gallop—by each man raiſing his bridle hand, cloſing his legs to his horſe's ſides, and inclining his body well back, and ſtopping his horſe on his haunches.

When after the charge, part of the ſquadron diſperſe to purſue, they ſhould open out and cover the front and intervals. When they return and form, each man ſhould obſerve his point, come round by his proper flank, and by the rear of his reſpective rank, and on no account croſs near the front of the ſquadron.—This direction chiefly reſpects the ſquadron in exerciſe.

Every ſoldier who is attacked, and whoſe order is broken, looks upon himſelf as beaten, and is not eaſily brought to rally, if the firſt advantage is purſued; and the operation is in itſelf difficult, after he has once turned to the rear.—But the body that attacks, though put in confuſion, will eaſily unite while its motion is progreſſive and forward, and acts with a confidence and exertion which will never be found in thoſe that ſtand ſtill.

Though there are many occaſions in war, where with advantage, from the nature of their arms and other circumſtances, infantry can and ought to wait the attack; yet there are hardly any where it can be eligible for cavalry to receive it: though circumſtances of ſituation may prevent a line from advancing much, it ſhould never abſolutely ſtand ſtill to receive the ſhock, otherwiſe its defeat is inevitable.

If the ground is open, the ſhock muſt be given with vigour; if it is ſo embarraſſed as to prevent the acting in body, leſs can be expected in ſuch a ſituation adapted to another arm, and improper to bring ca-

valry

valry into, whatever their ſuperiority of numbers may be; but if in ſpite of all local diſadvantages their exertion is requiſite, it muſt be made with ſpirit and as much in body as poſſible.

In the walk the ſword is carried with the blade reſting on the right arm.—In the trot and gallop the right hand muſt be ſteadied on the right thigh, the point of the ſword rather inclining forward—and in the CHARGE the hand is lifted, and the ſword carried rather forward and croſsways acroſs the head, with the edge outwards.

The regiments and ſquadrons muſt be well dreſſed before they move; horſes perfectly ſtraight, and carried on ſo during the whole attack; files on no account crowding; paces even and determined; horſes in hand, and perfect ſteadineſs and attention of every individual.

S. 13. *Commands.*

Command and duty of officers.

All COMMANDS muſt be given by officers, firm, loud, and explicit: every officer muſt therefore be accuſtomed to give ſuch commands, even to the ſmalleſt bodies, in the full extent of his voice; by ſuch bodies

he muſt not only be heard, but by the leaders of others who are dependent on his motions.—The juſtneſs of execution, and the confidence of the ſoldier, can only be in proportion to the firm, decided, and proper manner in which every officer of every rank gives his orders.—An officer who cannot thoroughly diſcipline and exerciſe the body entruſted to his command, is not fit in time of ſervice to lead it againſt the enemy: he cannot be cool and collected in the time of danger; he cannot profit of favourable circumſtances from an inability to direct others; the fate of many may depend on his ill or well acquitting himſelf of his duty.—It is not ſufficient to advance with perſonal bravery, it is requiſite to have that degree of intelligence which ſhould diſtinguiſh every officer according to his ſtation; nor can ſoldiers ever act with ſpirit and animation, when they have no reliance on the capacity of thoſe who do conduct them.

Nature of commands.

Commands of CAUTION, being ſuch as are preparatory to a movement, ſhould be ſufficiently full and explanatory.—Commands of EXECUTION ſhould be ſhort, and avoiding uneſſential words.

Commands given by reſpective leaders.

The commanding officers of regiments give and repeat all general commands, which are alſo ſhortly and quickly repeated by commanding officers of ſquadrons, eſpecially ſuch as are executory, as MARCH! HALT! DRESS! &c.—It is only when the ſquadrons and line are broken into parts, that the diviſion officers give commands, and thoſe chiefly executory, as *Halt! Dreſs!* &c.; alſo the ſeveral words neceſſary for the wheels made in column of march by each diviſion; the

ſeveral

ſeveral words neceſſary when the diviſions come up ſucceſſively from open or cloſe column, into line or column, whether conducted by line or flank movements; and in general whenever their diviſions are moving as diſtinct though dependent bodies.—But the wheeling from column into general line, or from line into general column, is made at the word MARCH! repeated by leaders of ſquadrons; the whole column is alſo put in march, and halted, by word from the leaders of ſquadrons, as is the ſquadron and regiment in all movements of the line in front.

All commands cannot be aſcertained.

It is impoſſible to aſcertain the words of command to be given in all caſes! where ſuch are not pointed out, they muſt depend on the circumſtances of the ſituation, and be ſhort, clear, and expreſſive of what is to be done.

When commands are not diſtinctly heard.

When a general order is not heard by a part of the line, each regimental commander (when the intention is obvious and undoubted) will conform as quickly as poſſible to the movement which he ſees executed on his right or left, according to the point from whence he perceives it to begin—but ſquadron and diviſion officers execute only on the orders of their regimental commander.

Commands by ranks, or by diviſions.

When *rank* makes a part of any word of command (as in ranks by three's or two's) it means that each rank ſeparately ſhould perform the ſame thing; but when the command by *ſquadron*, *half ſquadron*, *diviſion*, or *ſub-diviſion* is given, it implies always that the rear rank, which is at cloſe order, ſhould accompany and

cover the front rank in all wheelings, inclinings, and movements of the body.

Quick repetition of commands moſt eſſential.

After the chief commander has announced the orders, and particularly the words of execution, as MARCH! FORM! HALT! &c. the repetition of them by every other individual concerned, muſt not be ſtrictly ſucceſſive, but as much as can be in a volley, to beget that preciſion of movement, which in manœuvre is indiſpenſible; and the larger the body, the more eſſentially does this circumſtance operate.

Abbreviation of commands.

In the quick movements and manœuvres of cavalry, there is not time for the full and formal words of command.——On ſuch occaſions they muſt be rapidly given, much abridged, and all expletives omitted; inſtead of——

Ranks by three's, to the right about Wheel! ſay, *Three's about wheel!*

Ranks by three's, to the left wheel!——*Three's left Wheel!*

Diviſion to the right incline!——*Right incline*, &c. &c. which from the nature of the movements, and to troops well trained, are ſufficiently intelligible.

Commands how given in line.

When ſeveral regiments manœuvre together, the commanding officer of the line or column gives his ſhort orders of caution or execution to the commanding officer of the regulating ſquadron of the line, or of the head of the column, where he in general is himſelf; and ſometimes to the commander of the regiment,

giment, to which he is then neareſt, and each regimental commander repeats them loud, without delay, to his ſquadron leaders.—When any complicated or combined movement is to be made, which requires previous explanation, it muſt be communicated clearly to the commanders of corps by detached officers, before the execution can be ordered to commence.—— The ſeveral chiefs of brigades watch over and direct the internal movements of their reſpective bodies; they repeat the general orders of execution given, if they ſee that it is neceſſary, and announce ſuch preparatory ones as are verbally ſent to them.

Partial SIGNALS of the trumpet for or by particular regiments, muſt not be given in line, but from the regiment where the chief commander is; and by his particular directions ſuch ſignals may, when proper, be made for the whole, though not repeated by regiments —as if halted, to MARCH! if walking, to TROT! to GALLOP! to CHARGE! to HALT! to RALLY! and form, if broken and diſperſed.—Such ſignals are to be regarded as warnings to commanding officers, but their execution ought to follow immediately in conſequence of their orders.——And at all times the quickneſs and intelligence of commanding officers of regiments and ſquadrons in line or column, muſt prompt them inſtantly to perform their correſponding part of a movement, whenever they evidently ſee that it is their duty ſo to do.——The only ſignals of the trumpet that ſeem neceſſary to be repeated by the regiments of a Signals.

line, are thoſe to CHARGE! and thoſe to RALLY! and aſſemble.

S. 14. *Movements.*

General movements how made.

The MOVEMENTS or all great bodies are made either in line of column.—In line they are regulated by a named ſquadron; in column they are directed by its head diviſion, and the commander of the whole is near the regulating body.——There are very few caſes in which the center ought to regulate, although the direct march of the line in front appears to be the eaſieſt conducted by the center.——If an enemy is to be turned, and an attack made, it is by the flank that ſuch movements are led.———If the line is thrown backward or forward, it is generally on a flank point (of appui.)——If the line breaks into column, it is the head or leading flank of that column which conducts, and whoſe writhes and turnings are followed by every other part of the body, and ſuch head becomes again a flank when the line is formed.—It is ſeldom that an attack is formed from the center, and a movement ſeldomer need be.——The commander will therefore be on which ever flank directs the operations of the line, and by which he propoſes to make the attack, or to counteract the attempts of the enemy.

Movements generally regulated by a flank.

Movements

Movements must be divided into distinct parts; and each executed by separate and explanatory words of command. Division of movements.

Alterations of position, in considerable bodies, must begin from a previous HALT, however short; except giving a new direction to the heads of columns, or encreasing or diminishing their front, which may be done while in motion.———As the principle of moving, forming, and dressing upon given and determined points is just, quick changes of position of a considerable body formed in line, attempted while on the move, and not proceeding from a previous halt (however short) will be false and defective; the effects of which, though not so apparent in a single squadron or regiment, would be very obvious in a line or column of any extent.——A pause between each change of situation, so essentially necessary to the movements of great bodies, should seldom be omitted in those of small ones; squareness of dressing, the exact perpendiculars of march, and the correct relative position of the whole, are thereby ascertained. Such alterations of situation made from the halt, may, when necessary, succeed each other instantly and quickly; no time need be taken up in scrupulous dressing, but every one may be immediately apprized of the following movement, which circumstances require. Alterations of position to begin from a halt.

In the movements of a SINGLE regiment, and in the taking up of a new position, it may not seem material whether a flank of it is placed a few yards to the one hand Necessity of precision in the movements of single regiments.

hand or other, or whether the line formed on is exactly directed on any certain point.—But when a regiment makes a part of a more conſiderable body, then all its poſitions being relative to other regiments, and to given points, if its formations are not accurate and juſt, it will create general confuſion, and give falſe directions and diſtances to thoſe whoſe ſituations may be determined by it.—The neceſſity of every ſingle regiment being accuſtomed to make its changes of poſition and formation on determined points, is therefore obvious, and to which they ſhould be carefully trained.

What is required of a line of cavalry.

If OFFICERS are obſerving of, and attentive to their true diſtances of diviſions, and of the covering of their pivot flanks, the moſt conſiderable column of cavalry ought to be able in changing its poſition—to ENTER on a given alignement, at a briſk TROT!—to HALT!—to WHEEL INTO LINE!—to ADVANCE;—and to CHARGE!—without more than a momentary pauſe between each operation of the halt, wheel and advance, and without being under any neceſſity of dreſſing, correcting diſtances, or alteration whatever; and unleſs regiments are equal to, and can be depended on for ſuch operation, no critical or advantageous meaſure when cloſe to the enemy can be attempted; and the great efforts that cavalry ought to make, from the celerity and juſtneſs of its movements, will be loſt.

What is required of an Officer.

An OFFICER muſt not only know the poſt which he ſhould occupy in all changes of ſituation, the commands which he ſhould give, and the general intention

tion of the required movement; but he ſhould alſo be maſter of the principles on which each is made, and of the faults that may be committed, in order to avoid them himſelf, and to inſtruct others.—Theſe principles are in themſelves ſo ſimple, that moderate reflexion, habit, and attention, will ſoon ſhow them to the eye, and fix them in the mind.

Movements in column if poſſible to be made by diviſions or ſub-diviſions.

Although the NATURE of routes and of roads, may ſometimes limit common marches to be made on a very ſmall front; yet flank marches near an enemy, or changes of poſition in preſence of an enemy, cannot be effected with preciſion, firmneſs, or certainty on a leſs front than ranks by *three's*, or, indeed, when poſſible, on a front of a *diviſion* (or of a *ſub-diviſion*, if the ſquadron is ſtrong, as from 48 to 60 files) for then the ſteadineſs and correctneſs of pivot officers may enſure the inſtant—HALT! WHEEL UP INTO LINE! and ADVANCE! upon the enemy——And it will ſeldom happen, that changes of poſition made in order to attack to the greater advantage will be required, but in ſituations that allow ſuch changes to be made by a flank movement, and without lengthening out the line during the tranſition from one point to another.

S. 15. *Line of March and Formation.*

Movements in a ſtraight line always made on two objects.

Every LEADER of a body, moving on any front whatever, who means to conduct it in a ſtraight line, muſt march upon *two* points, which he invariably preſerves

ſerves ſo as to cover each other; if ſuch points are not aſcertained for him, he muſt inſtantly determine them for himſelf, and if no ſtrong or marked objects preſent themſelves in his direction, he can never fail, by caſting his eyes along the ground, to find ſuch ſmall ones as will anſwer his purpoſe, and theſe from time to time he renews as he approaches them.—To march ſtraight on one object only with certainty and without wavering, is not to be depended on.

The alignement.

To march or form in the *alignement*, is to make troops march or form in any part of the ſtraight line which joins two given points, or is prolonged beyond them.

Taking up a line of formation.

The *line* on which troops in column move ſtraight, or on which they are ſucceſſively to form, is taken up to an extent by the prolongation of an original, ſhort, and given *Baſe* (OA), of two perſons placed where the troops firſt begin to enter, or form upon that line, the direction of which has been determined by the views of the commander, and which can ſeldom fail to point on ſome diſtant and diſtinct object, that will ſerve to correct the poſition of the different perſons who ſucceſſively, as their ſeparate bodies require it, prolong the line from the ſeveral points already eſtabliſhed in it.

Fig. 2. 1. 3.

Poſition of markers on the line.

When the leading body of a column arrives at any point where it is to enter on a ſtraight line, a perſon will be placed with his horſe's head facing to the pivot flank

flank of the column; each leader will thus know why he is so placed, and will, in passing close to him and to every other person posted in a similar manner, give every attention to continue the alignement.

Position of pivots with respect to markers of the line.

When a column is standing or moving, the pivot leaders will always touch the line of the heads of such horses as they find placed facing to them, and marking the direction of the line.---When the divisions wheel up into line, the horses heads of the line, and of the marking persons will then touch, and the dressing of the men will of course be half a horse's length removed from the line of horses heads of the marking persons.---When divisions come up in front successively into line, they come up to the horses heads of the marking persons.

Fig. 1, 2, 3.

Taking up a line of formation.

In general, therefore, the point where a formation or entry into an alignement is to be made, being marked by a fixed person (A) the commander will place a second person (o), 50 or 60 yards on this side of him, exactly in the direction which he determines to give to his new line, which often must be taken up by the eye, as relative to the position of an enemy, and may not point on any remarkable object. These two persons (facing to the front which the troops are to take up) become the *Base* of march or formation, which, by adjutants or others successively aligning themselves backward upon them, and upon each other, is prolonged with accuracy to any required length.

Taking up a line of formation from two original given points.

Two original or *Base* points (o A) which are to be prolonged, should not be too close together, otherwise the

the direction of the line muſt be indiſtinct, and the farther they are aſunder the better can a line be taken upon them.——Where two *Baſe* points (oA) are to be given, ſo as to line on a third or diſtant aſcertained point (D), the middle one (A) ſhould be firſt placed, and the outer one (O) is immediately and eaſily taken up, by a perſon who prolongs the line of the middle and diſtant one. Was the outer one (O) to be firſt taken, time would be loſt, in from thence directing the ſhifting of the middle one (A), till it is truly lined on the more diſtant point (D); beſides the middle point (A) in many changes of poſitions of a line or column, is naturally the firſt aſcertained (being the pivot flank of the diviſion on which the change is to be made, or the point of march towards which the column is moving) and from thence the diſtant point is then taken, which gives the new direction, and depends on the eye and intention of the commander; the eaſy aſcertaining the outer one follows of courſe.——Or the commander, after aſcertaining the middle one (A) will place the outer one (O) at pleaſure, and find out a diſtant one, if any ſuch preſents itſelf in the prolongation of the other two.—At any rate the middle one is the point firſt to be determined.

Fig. 1.

Taking up a line of formation.

Prolonging a line by officers or non-commiſſioned officers.

When a number of perſons (s. s. s. s.) are to be individually, ſucceſſively, and ſeparately ſent out, in order to give a direction on which the pivots of the diviſions of a column are to ſtand, or flanks of diviſions, which ſucceſſively come into line, are to be halted, or on which the dreſſing of a line is to be corrected,

Fig. 2.

two

two ſuch perſons will be truly and previouſly placed; and the others, the more exactly to attain a perfect line, inſtead of attempting at once to dreſs by each other's breaſts, will firſt cover in *file* with preciſion, and then carefully face (on the center of their own perſons) as directed, before their ſeveral diviſions move up to them.—Were ſuch perſons to endeavour to take up their ground at firſt, by dreſſing in a line, the leaſt inclination backward or forward of the body, and their uncertainty of poſition, would make it a more difficult operation: but in file, when each places himſelf ſquare on the line covering the necks of thoſe before him, the inclination of the body forward or backward, does not affect the direction, and the end propoſed is at once attained.

Succeſſive formation of diviſions into line. Fig. 4.

In ſucceſſive forming of diviſions into line, as from cloſe column, from echellon, &c. the firſt diviſion (A. a) that arrives, and is truly formed on it, is conſidered as the *Baſe*, which is conſtantly prolonging for the others (and facing to the horſes heads of which two perſons are immediately placed as the baſe objects) the men as they come up endeavour to line well on the part already formed, and each leader corrects on a point taken in the true prolongation, beyond where the flank of his diviſion is to extend; and thus ſquadron after ſquadron, and regiment after regiment, arrives in line.

Points of movement and formation aſ-

Aſcertaining the points neceſſary for the movements and formations of the regiment, is the particular buſineſs

certained by appointed perſons.

ſineſs of the adjutant in the field; in this exerciſe he may be aſſiſted by detached perſons placed behind each flank, who are properly trained quickly to take up ſuch line as he ſhall give them, and for this purpoſe they are only to be ſent out ſucceſſively, and as their aid is wanted, nor are they to make any buſtle or unneceſſary parade; and when the operation for which they are ſent out is accompliſhed, they will immediately return behind their proper flank.

The neceſſity of perſons well trained to prolong and give line of march and formation.

The neceſſity of officers and non-commiſſioned officers being well trained, to prolong lines, take up diſtances, and give thoſe aids which are ſo eſſential in the formations and movements of all conſiderable bodies, is evident and much to be attended to.—— Perſons active, intelligent, and well mounted, can alone aſſiſt the operations of cavalry, nor are camp colours, or any ſuch improper and ſuperfluous modes neceſſary, or in general to be uſed.

The markers of the alignement in column, or of the formations in line, are not to quit their ground after the halt of either, till all neceſſary dreſſing is accompliſhed, and that they are directed ſo to do; they ſerve not only as points of movement, but as points of correction.

S. 16. *Breaking and forming Squadrons.*

Front of the ſquadron in line.

A SQUADRON formed in line with the files at ſix inches from boot top to boot top, occupies in front nearly

nearly as many yards as it has files, or about thirty-four inches for each horſe.

When the ſquadron moves from a flank, each rank in *ſingle file* (the rear ſupernumeraries ſtill on the flank) it then occupies nearly three times the ground it before ſtood on, ſuppoſing ſufficient diſtance from horſe to horſe for facility of movement. Extenſion of the ſquadron in column.

When the ſquadron has wheeled and extended into *ranks by two's*) the rear ſupernumeraries ſtill on the flanks) it then occupies nearly two thirds more ground than it before ſtood on.

When the ſquadron has wheeled *ranks by three's* to a flank, with an officer in front, another in the rear, the ſtandard and its coverer each in the middle of the two center ranks of ſixes, the ranks within about two feet from croup to head; the ſquadron has thus extended about one ſixth more than it before ſtood on.

When the ſquadron has wheeled to a flank by *half ſquadrons*, by *diviſions*, or by *ſub diviſions* of more than ſix files, it then occupies leſs ground than it before ſtood on, by the front of the column, whatever it is.

Therefore it appears when a line of cavalry, formed with intervals of one third of the ſquadron, is to march in column of

Ranks by files, that ſuch column is near three times longer than when formed in line. Extenſion of the line, when in column.

Ranks by two's, that such column is more than one third longer than the line.

Ranks by three's, that such column causes no extension of the line, though it does of each squadron into its interval, and that there is still a distance to be preserved from squadron to squadron.

Divisions of any kind above five files in front, that such column causes no extension, and that there are intervals between squadrons and divisions, in proportion to the then front of the column.

Leaders of divisions of the squadron.

Whenever the SQUADRON is broken into divisions, or parts, for the purpose of movement, each separate body has a *leader*, on whom the eye and attention of each soldier is fixed.—In *column*, such leader will be on the pivot flank of his division in all situations of manœuvre. These leaders cover each other in the given direction in which the column is to move; they are not themselves then to be covered by any one, and are answerable for true distances.—Should any such leader not be appointed, or be wanting to a division, his place is to remain vacant, and not to be occupied by the flank files of men, for such flank files of men are invariably to remain covering each other.

Leaders of divisions of the squadron in column.

Commands given when the squadron

When from the halt, the squadron, by wheels to its flank, *breaks into open column*, the commanding officer

cer gives the words (HALF SQUADRONS, DIVISIONS, SUB DIVISIONS) TO THE {right / or / left} WHEEL! MARCH! HALT! DRESS! by the ſtanding flank, and then EYES {right / or / left} by the pivot flank, after which the whole is put in motion by the word, MARCH!—Should the word, EYES (right or left) be omitted, at any rate they are directed to the pivot flank, at the word, MARCH!

breaks to a flank by any of its tellings off.

When the ſquadron has wheeled to a flank by *half ſquadrons*——*If to the right*, the officer from the right of the ſquadron immediately ſhifts to the left of his half ſquadron, to conduct the pivot of the leading half ſquadron, and the officer who was on the left of the ſquadron wheels up, and remains on the pivot of his own half ſquadron.---*If to the left*, then the left officer ſhifts to the right of his half ſquadron, and the right officer wheels up, and remains on the right of his own half ſquadron.

Pivot leaders in column of half ſquadrons.

When the ſquadron has wheeled to a flank by *diviſions*---*If to the right*, then the left officer is on the pivot of the rear diviſion, and the right officer ſhifts to the pivot of the front diviſion; and the ſerjeants on the right of the two center diviſions ſhift each to the left of his own diviſion——*If to the left*, then the right officer wheels up, and is on the pivot flank of the rear diviſion; the ſerjeants on the right of the two center diviſions alſo wheel up, and the left

Pivot leaders in column of diviſions.

flank officer ſhifts to the pivot of the leading diviſion of the ſquadron.

Columns of ſub-diviſions.

When the ſquadron has wheeled to a flank by *ſub-diviſions*, then the two flank officers, and their coverers, and the two center ſerjeants, and their coverers, will each be on the pivot flank of a ſub-diviſion.

Standard in column.

In the wheelings of the ſquadron into *half ſquadrons*, *diviſions*, or *ſub-diviſions*, the ſtandard and its coverer wheel up with the leading half-ſquadron, or the ſecond diviſion, or the fourth ſub-diviſion from the flank wheeled to, ſo as to place themſelves, at the concluſion of the wheel, behind the ſecond and third file from the pivot of each of the ſaid bodies.—And when theſe bodies wheel up to form ſquadron, the ſtandard ſhifts briſkly to its place in the center, during the wheel.

Commands given when the ſquadron wheels to a flank, ranks by three's or by two's.

When from the halt, the ſquadron wheels to its flank *ranks by three's* or by *two's*, the commanding officer gives the words (RANKS BY THREE'S, OR BY TWO'S)

TO THE { right / left } or { left / right } WHEEL! MARCH! HALT! DRESS!

to the pivot hand, after which the whole is put in motion at the ſecond word, March! the whole three's at the ſame inſtant, and increaſing their diſtances while on the move: or the two's (who are ſtanding at a half wheel) ſucceſſively as ſoon as each is enabled ſo to do, and can get its marching diſtance.

Column of ranks by three's.

When the ſquadron wheels to the right or left, by *ranks by three's*, the middle man of each three will

turn

turn on his horſe's fore feet, and of the other two, one will rein back, and the other moves forward to dreſs with him---A flank officer is at the head of the ſquadron, the other flank officer at the rear.—The ſtandard is in the middle of the leading center rank of ſixes when wheeled up, and its coverer is in the middle of the rank behind it.---The ſupernumeraries of the rear rank will, if the ground requires it, fall in and follow the rear of the ſquadron, or otherwiſe turn ſingly, and march on its flank.—In this ſituation in movement, the ſquadron has opened out one ſixth more than the ground it ſtood formed on.

Column of ranks by two's.

When the ſquadron wheels to a flank, by *ranks by two's*, the flank man of each two will half turn on his horſe's fore feet, and the other man will half wheel up, ſo as to make a half face to the flank, and be in a ſituation to move off ſucceſſively as it comes to their turn. A flank officer is at the head of the ſquadron, the other flank officer in the rear of it.—The ſtandard and its coverer turn each on his own ground, and move between the ranks: the ſerrefiles of the rear will, if the ground requires it, fall in and follow the rear of the ſquadron, or otherwiſe turn ſingly, and march on its flank. In this ſituation in movement, the ſquadron has opened out near two thirds more than the ground it ſtood formed on.

Attentions in ranks by three's and by two's.

In the *flank movements* of ranks by three's, or by two's, the files are as cloſe up as they well can, without crowding: the whole dreſs to the pivot hand, and the pivot men of the ranks are anſwerable for the covering and keeping up to thoſe that precede them:

and to this the officers and ſerrefiles, who are diſengaged from the ranks, muſt be attentive.

Serrefiles in column.

When, for the purpoſe of *manœuvre*, the ſquadron breaks to the flank by half ſquadrons or diviſions, the ſerrefiles are cloſe up behind each: when by ſub-diviſions, they are on the flank, not the pivot one.

Dreſſing in diviſion wheels.

During all diviſion wheelings on a *fixed flank*, the eyes of the men are directed to the wheeling hand. —At the word *Halt! Dreſs!* they are immediately turned to the ſtanding hand, and are from thence corrected.—The ſquare wheel of the quarter circle is ſo eſſentially neceſſary to correct movements in column and formations in line, that every help ſhould be applied to enſure its juſtneſs, and points ſhould be thrown out exactly to aſcertain it.

Halt of diviſions.

Halts of diviſions, from wheels, are made with eyes turned to the ſtanding flank.

Poſt of commanding officers.

Commanding officers of regiments and ſquadrons remain on (but wide of) the pivot flanks, to obſerve and regulate the march, and inſtantaneouſly to form when ordered.

Shifting of officers to pivot flanks.

Commanding officers muſt take care that conducting officers of flanks or pivots ſhift nimbly to ſuch points, at the proper inſtant they ſhould there place themſelves.

Formation of the ſquadron and line from column of diviſions.

If a line has marched to a flank in *column of ſquadrons, half ſquadrons, diviſions*, or *ſub-diviſions*, in ſuch caſes

caſes it occupies (intervals being preſerved) exactly the ground requiſite for its formation in line; which is at any inſtant made by halting, and wheeling up the quarter circle.

Formation of ſquadron and line from column of ranks by three's.

If a line is moving to a flank, ſquadrons by *ranks by three's*. As each ſquadron in march then occupies more ground than what it ſtands on when formed, and that about half the intervals ſtill ought to remain, therefore if the whole halts at the ſame inſtant, and *each* ſquadron wheels up its three's, cloſing them at the ſame time to its leading flank, the line ſhould then be completely formed with its proper interval. ——The ſquadrons thus forming all at the ſame time.

Formation of ſquadron and line from column of ranks by two's.

If a line is marching correctly to the flank *ranks by two's*, every man as cloſe as he well can to his preceding file leader, no diſtance between ſquadrons, that it halts, and that the pivot men are covered, ſuch line will ſtill have lengthened out conſiderably, viz. one third at leaſt.—Therefore, if it forms to the pivot flank, the four leading men of the head ſquadron wheel up to the flank by two's; the line is put in motion, the other men of the leading ſquadron ſucceſſively wheel up when they cloſe to their reſpective leaders; each other ſquadron, as its head arrives at its interval diſtance from the preceding one, halts and forms in the ſame manner.——The ſquadrons thus form ſucceſſively as they gain their diſtances.

When the column of —— wheels up into ſquadron or line.

When from the halt, and from open column, the ſquadron is formed by the *wheeling up of its diviſions*. The commanding officer gives the words (half ſquadrons, diviſions, ſub-diviſions, ranks by three's) WHEEL INTO LINE! on which pivot leaders immediately place themſelves on the reverſe flank of ſuch diviſion, as by its wheel up brings them to their true place in the ſquadron; the pivot officer of the rear diviſion is alone an exception, being already at his poſt in ſquadron. At the word MARCH! the whole wheel up, and receive the word HALT! DRESS! by the ſtanding flank, and the line of pivots; the ſtandard, ferrefiles, and every thing having reſumed their place in ſquadron.—Squadrons forming from ranks by *two's*, receive ſucceſſively from their leaders, as their heads come to their ground, the words, WHEEL INTO SQUADRON! HALT! DRESS! to the hand formed to.

Wheels from column into line, made on pivot files of men.

In wheeling from column into line, it is on the *flank files of men*, and not on the pivot leaders that the wheels are made; therefore, on the word being given to WHEEL INTO LINE! thoſe leaders quit the flanks, and are diſpoſed of as above, and this allows that after the wheel the horſes heads of the pivot men exactly touch the heads of thoſe that are facing towards and marking the general line.

Aids neceſſary to be given when the column wheels up into line.

When the open column of ſquadrons ſtands halted, ready to *wheel up into line*---on the caution ſo to do, and before the word MARCH! an officer or under officer from the wheeling flank (or from the rear) of each ſquadron, moves quickly forward, and places himſelf

himſelf in the line of pivots, and thereby becomes an object, which determines the ſquare of the wheel, and which the outward man of each ſquadron knows he is not to paſs.——In an open column of half ſquadrons, the leading half only of each ſquadron will ſend out ſuch an object, as the rear half (if diſtances are juſt) wheels up to the pivot of the leading half.——In an open column of diviſions, or ſubdiviſions, the leading one of each will only ſend out ſuch object.——In column of ranks by three's, or by two's, commanding officers of regiments will always endeavour by detached perſons, to prolong the line as taken from the head of the column, in order to make their reſpective formations correct in the general line.——The rear diviſion of a column, before it wheels up into line, will always place an object of formation behind its pivot flank, and ſuch object is the one on which the flank ſquadron is corrected after the wheel into line.

S. 17. *Open Column.*

Formation of columns.

ALL COLUMNS are ſuppoſed formed from line, for the convenience of movement, and for the purpoſe of again extending into line.---Every column of march or manœuvre muſt be formed by a regular ſucceſſion of the diviſions from one flank to the other of the line,

line, or of such of its parts as compose the column, for whatever is the relative position of a body in line, such ought it to be in column; and where several connected columns are formed, the same flanks of each should be in front; but whether rights or lefts will depend on circumstances.——Columns formed from the center of regiments or lines will seldom be made, are partial, and not adapted as the others are to movements, and formations in all situations.

Columns of march and manœuvre.

The column is named that of *march*, or *route*, when applied to common marches, where the attention of men and officers is not so much kept on the stretch. ——It is named the *column of manœuvre*, when being within reach of an enemy, the greatest exactness is required, in order to its speedy formation at any instant into line during its transition from one position to another.

Front and extent of columns.

Columns of march or manœuvre will generally be composed of divisions, sub-divisions or ranks by three's; for the purposes of movement they need not exceed twelve file in front, nor should they be under six men in front, otherwise there will not be space to loosen the ranks, and the line will be of course lengthened out, as happens in the march of ranks by two's or by files---From six to ten men in front they are most advantageously composed for quick manœuvres.

Circumstance that determines the leading flank of columns.

Column of march or manœuvre will be formed with the left in front, whenever it is probable that the formation of the line will be required to the right flank, and vice versa when required to the left flank.

The

The proper pivot flank in column, is that which, when wheeled up to, preſerves the diviſions of the line in the natural order, and to their proper front; the other may be called the *reverſe flank.*——In column, diviſions cover and dreſs to the proper pivot flank; to the left when the right is in front, and to the right when the left is in front. Pivot flank and reverſe flank of diviſions, &c. in column.

In column, the chief commander is with the leading diviſion; and in line with the directing ſquadron.

In all movements, formations, and changes of poſition of the column, *diſtances and dreſſing* are taken from the directing hand, viz. from the head of the column, or from the hand to which the formation is making, or to be made. Diſtances and dreſſing where taken from.

In movements in column, the *pivot officers*, or non-commiſſioned officers, are anſwerable for covering, and for proper wheeling diſtances, and the eyes of the whole are turned to the pivot; ſuch pivot leaders muſt attend to thoſe two circumſtances only, and by no means be looking to or giving directions to their diviſions; that care muſt be left to the officers on the other flank, or in the rear; for if they themſelves move ſteadily and truly, there is little doubt but their diviſions will always keep up to them. Pivot officers.

Officers that lead ſquadrons in line, guide pivots in column, or conduct the flanks of diviſions ſucceſſively into line, in changes of poſition, and indeed all officers who in their own perſons determine the movement Attentions in pivot officers, and leaders of ſeparate bodies.

ment of any body, muſt recollect, that unleſs they themſelves are ſteady, correct, and ſmooth in the path which they give, their ſeveral bodies cannot follow in firm or proper order, but will partake of every irregularity of ſuch leader, who therefore muſt attend to his objects of diſtance, and leading, and beſtow only an occaſional glance of his eye on the dreſſing of the diviſion he leads.

Attentions of the rear diviſions of the column when in march.

The rear diviſions of a column in march always follow every turn and twiſt which the head makes; each ſucceſſively changing its direction at whatever point the leading one may have ſo done.——When at any unexpected moment a column is ordered to halt, the pivot leaders of each diviſion muſt remain fixed where they are found, at the word HALT!—— If the march of the column is again to be reſumed, the rear diviſions will continue to follow the exact path traced out by the head; nor are any of the following diviſions of a column ever to deviate from this rule, or endeavour of themſelves to get into a ſtraight line, when the general direction is a winding one, until an expreſs order is given for that purpoſe, which can hardly ever happen, till the head of the column is halted, with a determination to form the line in a ſtraight direction, in which caſe, the correction of pivots will begin from the head of the column.

March of the column thro' a wood, or in embarraſſed ground.

The march in column through a thin wood, or in ground where impediments frequently change the direction of its head, will be beſt made by a front of ſub-

diviſions,

diviſions or ranks by three's.——The pivot files will preſerve exact diſtances from each other, chooſe their own ground, and wind as the trees or other impediments permit, along a general direction. In ſuch ſituation, at no time, if it is poſſible, ſhould any of the pivot flank leaders be obliged to double or quit the continued line of march; but the other files may be (when impediments are to be paſſed) much opened or looſened from thoſe pivots, who in the meantime moving free, and preſerving wheeling diſtances, are in a ſituation at every inſtant to *halt* and *form* in line, the others cloſing in to them.

Obſtacles in the march of a column in the alignement.

Should the march in a ſtraight alignement be at any time *interrupted* by pools of water, or any other obſtacle which is impaſſable, the march will be continued ſtraight to that obſtacle, the obſtacle will be marched round (and always if poſſible, by deviating to the reverſe flank, ſo as to remain behind the line) and the ſame ſtraight line will again on the other ſide be taken up by the pivots, at the point in it which a detached perſon has prepared.——Allowance will be made when the line is to form, for the breadth of ſuch obſtacle, by the doubling of as many diviſions as will fill up the vacancy (when it can be done) which is thereby occaſioned in the line; nor muſt any ſmall interruptions in the line, that can poſſibly be ſurmounted, ever make the pivots deviate from the ſtraight line, when the intention of forming on the line is evident, and known to all.

Commander and adjutant of a regiment correct pivots.

In column, the commander of a regiment remains near its leading diviſion, and the adjutant, (or ſome appointed perſon) remains near its cloſing diviſion; they are thus ready to preſerve the line of march, and at the inſtant of halting, to make ſuch correction of pivots as may be neceſſary; for which purpoſe the adjutant takes care immediately to place himſelf in the prolongation of the general line, which he takes up from the points in his front already eſtabliſhed in it, and from ſuch bodies as before him have already halted in it.——In this manner the adjutant in his own perſon gives the flank point on which each commander from his leading diviſion at all times forms and dreſſes his ſquadron and regiment.

Aids given to the march or halt of the column.

If the commander of a column ſhould not himſelf be at the head of the column when it changes direction, or halts to form, the then leader of the column muſt immediately aſcertain the degree of change of direction, or correct the pivots, according to the obvious intention of the commander.——In correcting the pivots, or when an aſcertained line has not been given, then ſuch a one will be inſtantly taken up as correſponding with the evident deſign of the movement, may occaſion the leaſt ſhifting of the flanks, and the eaſieſt to be acquired.

Helps given to the ſtraight march of the column.

During the march of a column in a ſtraight alignement, the commanding officers and adjutants of regiments ſhould occaſionally themſelves *halt* in the true line, facing to the column, and by remaining till their pivot leaders ſucceſſively paſs them, they will

will thus oblige them to correct their line if needful.

No doubling up, encreasing, or diminishing the front of the column, must be made after entering on a straight alignement in order to form in line.—Such operation when necessary, should be performed before the line of formation is entered on. The front of column not to be altered when marching in an alignement.

Officers who have an indistinct sight must never lead the head divisions of a column marching in a straight alignement, and must therefore be replaced on such occasions by others, whose more accurate vision, enables them to preserve and prolong the just line, which the whole are to follow. Short sighted officers cannot conduct the leading divisions of a column.

When the open column has marched on in an alignement, and is ordered to halt and form line, the pivots of the leading regiment are immediately corrected if necessary, the others instantly perfect their line upon it, and upon each other, and no time is lost in wheeling up into line, and then advancing. Correction of pivots of open column, before wheeling into line.

When a regiment is to correct its pivots in column, the commanding officer immediately places himself in the true line of formation (which he does from the objects that he knows and sees are in it) at the pivot flank of his leading division; his adjutant, or some other named person, does the same near the pivot flank of the last division of the regiment.——These two persons being thus themselves in the true line; the commanding Correction of pivots, by the commanding officer.

commanding officer quickly corrects his other pivots from the front to the rear of his regiment, which is thus truly placed, and ready to wheel into line.—— The correction of ſquadrons, when neceſſary, is individually made by each leader in the ſame manner.

Correction of pivots, by regiments, before wheeling into line.

When the pivots, or formation of a leading regiment of a column are once perfected, other diſtant regiments may from thence, by their adjutants prolonging ſuch line, take up or correct theirs, although there ſhould be intermediate regiments, who are then very improperly placed.

Correction of the ſquadron, and of the line, after wheeling up from column.

If the regiment, after wheeling up from column into line, is not critically well dreſſed, the fault muſt be in the internal part of the diviſions: this muſt be immediately corrected by each ſquadron leader on his former pivot men, who on no account muſt have moved, but remain ſo many fixed points, on whom the whole are lined. If any farther dreſſing is neceſſary, it is ordered and made by a field officer, who himſelf moves quickly cloſe along the front from the flank to which eyes are turned, to the other flank.

When ſquadrons ſucceſſively wheel up by diviſions on coming into line.

In changes of poſition made by flank movements of diviſions of the open column, and where the line is to be formed by the wheeling up of thoſe diviſions, in general the whole of a regiment will be halted on its ground, ſtand in column, and its pivots be adjuſted before it wheels up and forms; but frequently, and when judged neceſſary, the parts of it that arrive

in

in the line may form ſucceſſively as they come up; that is, when the diviſions of two ſquadrons are ſtanding in column on the line, and their pivots adjuſted, the leading one may be ordered to wheel up, and the ſecond one remain, till the third one is in like manner placed on the line, it then wheels up, and thus there is always one ſquadron ſtanding in column on the line, as a direction (together with the formed part of the line, and the ſeveral perſons who prolong it) for the continuation of the general formation to any extent.

Neceſſary extent of column of march

A column in movement, ſhould, if poſſible, never occupy more ground than what it ſtands on in line: but when the formation into line muſt undoubtedly be to the front, then the diviſions may be ordered to march cloſed up to half, quarter, or any other diſtance, and the formation may be made by prolonging the line, by deployment, by inclining up, or by half wheels, and marching on the oblique lines, as circumſtances require.

Change of direction in column.

An open column of ſquadrons, or half ſquadrons, will generally, from their extent of front, change the direction of their march by ſquared and quick wheels made on a flank: but the column of diviſions, ſubdiviſions, ranks by three's, or by two's, when obliged frequently to change its direction of march, may do it advantageouſly by the gradual and circling movement of the leading *pivot*, to which all others, as it comes to their turn ſucceſſively, conform, taking

care

care that at no inſtant whatever the ordered diſtances are changed or loſt, and that eyes remain turned to ſuch pivots.—Columns marching at half or quarter diſtance of their then front muſt alſo make their neceſſary wheels on a *moveable* pivot, otherwiſe a ſtop muſt enſue, and the column open out.

Quickneſs of wheels in column.

In all wheels of a column, in movement to change direction, and made by diviſions on a *fixed* flank, the outward file, whether officer or man, is the one wheeled upon; and the quickneſs of the wheels muſt be at leaſt double to the rate of march, otherwiſe the column may be liable to open out, and the wheeling point would not be cleared in time for each ſucceſſive diviſion.——In changes made on a *moveable* flank, the outward file of that flank is alſo the directing one.

Halting from the wheel, or from the march.

Halts of diviſions from wheels are made with eyes turned to the ſtanding flank——But all *Halts* from a march in front are made with the eyes turned to the point or points to which the troops while in march are looking.——After which, no dreſſing or movement whatever is to be made, until a ſeparate order directs it.

The halt of the line or column.

The whole column or line ſhould always be in ſo correct a ſituation, as to halt inſtantly on the word HALT!——But ſhould, at any time, the difficulties of ground have unavoidably opened out the column, or thrown ſquadrons out of the line, in ſuch caſe the halt

halt of thoſe ſquadrons will be ſucceſſive, as they regain their proper ſituations.

Wheelings into line, or into column, will be made ſucceſſively (but inſtantaneouſly) from regiment to regiment; and commanding officers of regiments, although they may not in a long line hear words of command, will by the eye follow ſuch movements when the intention is ſo clear and obvious.——The inſtant repetition of the word MARCH! by the leaders of ſquadrons, is what alone can enſure preciſion on theſe occaſions. Wheelings into line or column, by regiments.

When ſquadrons, half ſquadrons, or diviſions ſeparately move by a flank, to change poſition in column, or from line to place themſelves in open or cloſe column, or from cloſe column to deploy into line, &c. it will always, when poſſible, be done by *ranks by three's*, and the greateſt care be given, that the three's move as cloſe as they can, that at the inſtant the word HALT! FRONT! is given to each, the diviſion may be exactly formed by the wheeling of its three's, without any neceſſity for a cloſing in of its rear. Deployments &c. made by rank by three's.

Whenever diviſions or diſtinct bodies move in front, and arrive ſucceſſively in line; the eyes of the whole are turned to the hand to which they are to form, and from which they preſerve required diſtances.—The leading officer muſt be on the *inward* flank of his diviſion; he conducts it to its point of junction in line, and from thence dreſſes and corrects it on the perſon, who is previouſly placed beyond him, and General rule of moving, forming, dreſſing bodies that ſucceſſively march up, and arrive in line.

prolonging the general line. The outward flank of the laſt formed and halted body is always conſidered as the point of junction (neceſſary intervals included) of the ſucceeding one——Thus, the looking and lining of the ſoldier is always towards that point, and the flank of the line formed to; and the correction of dreſſing by the officer is always made from that point towards the other flank.——Therefore on all occaſions of moving up, forming and dreſſing in line, by the men's lining themſelves to one hand (inwards) and the officers correcting to the other (outwards) the moſt perfect line may be obtained: this great principle is to be obſerved from the ſmalleſt body to the moſt conſiderable corps, and regulates formations of the ſquadron, regiment, and the line.

Attentions of commanding officers in formations of the line.

In all formations of a conſiderable line, commanding officers of regiments muſt take every advantage from timeouſly throwing out intelligent perſons to give them true points in the general line; they will thereby avoid participating of the errors that others may have committed, in being behind or overſhooting the line; for nothing is more falſe than to make a general rule of always coming up to the ſquadron before one, without conſidering whether ſuch ſquadron is or is not truly halted and formed; it is therefore to the general line that every one muſt endeavour to conform, and not to the falſe one that may be given by ſingle ſquadrons or regiments.

Poſt of commanding officers of regiments.

The commanding officers of regiments are in the charge at the head of one of their ſquadrons, gene-

rally

rally of the one neareſt that of direction.---In all other ſituations of manœuvre they are moveable according to circumſtances, in general near the head of their column, or of their body, which firſt forms in line; when the line is formed in parade, they are at the head of the right ſquadron.

S. 18. *March in Line.*

March in line.

The march of the line in front is the moſt difficult, and the moſt material of all movements: it is requiſite near the enemy, and immediately precedes the attack.------In proportion to the extent of front and rapidity required does that difficulty increaſe; therefore too much exactneſs and minuteneſs in the execution of it cannot be obſerved.

General attention.

When marching in line, each ſquadron dreſſes to its own center, which center follows its own leader, the ſeveral leaders line with, and preſerve diſtances from each other, and from the regulating ſquadron; this alone has its objects of march, the others being all ſubordinate to, and conforming to its motions.

Paſſing obſtacles.

When parts of a line marching in front are interrupted by any obſtacle, they muſt halt, and by flank

movements of their diviſions or ſub-diviſions, double behind (into cloſe column) ſuch adjoining parts as are not ſo interrupted, and avoid preſſing upon them.

In column.

——In proportion as they paſs ſuch obſtacles, and that the ground permits them to come up into line, they will in the ſame manner, by flank movements, move up into their proper places, where a void ſpace has been preſerved for them. If only ſmall portions of a line are interrupted, and for a ſhort ſpace, they may follow in file, or rather in ranks by three's or two's, behind the flanks of the uninterrupted parts, and move up to their places in file (or by three's or two's) when it can be done.

By files, or ranks by three's or two's.

Halt of the line.

When the line halts, each ſquadron halts and dreſſes by its own center; and if the dreſſing of the general line is to be afterwards corrected, it ought to begin at, and be taken from the regulating ſquadron.

Succeſſive halt of ſquadrons.

The line ſhould always be in ſo correct a ſituation, as to halt inſtantly on the word *Halt!*—but if at any time the difficulties of ground have unavoidably thrown ſquadrons out of the line, in ſuch caſe, the halt of thoſe ſquadrons will be ſucceſſive, as they regain their proper ſituations.

Diſtances.

The diſtances of ſquadrons in line are always taken from ſtandard to ſtandard.

Standards.

The ſtandards muſt be always carried uniformly and upright, in order to facilitate the moving and dreſſing of the line.

After

After the march and halt in line of each ſquadron by its own center, if a more exact dreſſing is required, then two perſons are placed with their horſes heads before the flank files of the regulating ſquadron, which is previouſly dreſſed in the true direction: each other ſquadron, from each flank, advances (directly forward) a perſon to prolong that line; all eyes are directed to the regulating ſquadron; the whole (by ſquadrons, either together or ſucceſſively, and quickly as ordered) move up and halt in the given line.—A ſtraight line is in this manner obtained; but if the intervals are falſe, they muſt remain ſo till corrected by order, and by a ſeparate operation of flank marching. Dreſſing the line after halting.

A flank ſquadron of a line need never remain an inſtant with a falſe interval, or ill dreſſed, as its corrections do not interfere with any other part of the line. Flank ſquadron.

When it is neceſſary for any ſquadron, on account of inaccurate and looſe formation, to cloſe its files or parts by paſſing, it ſhould be done to ſuch ſize of the ſquadron as will beſt tend to eſtabliſh the juſt interval it ought to keep from the directing hand: this will depend on the quick eye and deciſion of the commanding officers of ſquadrons, who will hold it in view on ſuch occaſion. Cloſing files in line.

All correction of the dreſſing of a line, after forming or halting, is made from the point by which the movement, formation, or halt was made; ſhould that point be obliged to ſhift, then the line formed muſt The dreſſing of a line corrected on fixed and determined points.

be an accidental one. When the line halts after moving in front, ſuch point is the center of the regulating ſquadron. When from column, the line is formed by wheeling up, ſuch point is the flank, which was the leading pivot of the column. When the line is formed by the ſucceſſive marching up of diviſions in front, as in change of poſition on a given diviſion, ſuch point is the outward flank of the given diviſion.---In general, when corrections of a line are to be made, the commander places two or three perſons in the intended line which is inſtantly prolonged by others, and the regiments conform accordingly.

Dreſſing the line forward.

In the correction of the partial parts of a line, the reining back, or throwing back ſuch parts, cannot always be avoided; but where the whole line is to be new dreſſed, and that circumſtances admit, much facility attends the operation, if ſuch a direction is taken as cauſes a dreſſing forward, however ſmall, of every ſquadron that compoſes it.

General Circumstances that regulate the Changes of Position, and Formations of the Regiment and Line.

S. 19. *Changes of position of the regiment or line* from one distant situation to another are made, in *line*, or by the *Echellon* (diagonal) march of divisions in front, or by the movements of the column, especially of the *open column.*

Changes of position in open column, are in general movements of previous dispositon, made from one distant situation to another, not liable to the interruption of an enemy. Original or new positions, where circumstances allow, are in this manner easiest and soonest taken, especially in the prolongation or movement of a line to its flank.

By the movements of the open column.

Changes of position of the regiment or line already formed, when made in one or more open columns, may be divided into four parts.

1. The regiment or line wheels the quarter circle to the ordered hand by *divisions*, so as to be ready to move off in one or more columns.

2. A single regiment, by the flank march of *each* of its divisions by three's, moves to arrive in the new line. The leading regiment of a line does the same, but the second, third, and every other

other regiment of a *line* move off ſeparate in regimental columns of diviſions, till they arrive at the new poſition, and it is there that their diviſions ſeparately and ſucceſſively enter that poſition.

3. The diviſions again form in a general open column, perpendicular to the new direction.

4. When the diviſions of each regiment are thus arrived, halted, and adjuſted, the line is formed by their wheeling up, ſquadron after ſquadron, regiment after regiment, or the whole together as ordered.

By the Echellon or diagonal movements.

The Echellon (or diagonal) changes of poſition are the ſafeſt that can be employed in the preſence of, and near to an enemy; they are almoſt equal in ſecurity to the march of the line in front, or to an uniform wheel of the line, but which is very difficult to execute; they can be uſed in the moſt critical ſituations where the filings and movements of the open column could not be riſked: they are more particularly uſed, when the enemy's flank can be taken by throwing the body forward, or when one's own is to be covered by throwing it backward. The advantages attending them are, the preſerving a general front during the march, and allowing ſufficient freedom of movement, which in ſuch a ſituation is indiſpenſible; they

they enable to change position on any division of the line, either on a fixed or moving point, and at any instant the movement can be stopt, a line formed, and a sudden attack repulsed.—The Echellon changes require the ground to be nearly of such a nature as a full line could advance in; and any of its divisions that meet with obstacles in their march will pass them in the same manner as they do in line, by doubling divisions, or following ranks by three's, and without interrupting the progress of the others.

Changes of position of the regiment or line made by the Echellon march of divisions consist of three parts.

1. Divisions (generally half squadrons) of the regiment or line, wheel forward an eighth, quarter, or half wheel, as ordered towards the hand to which they are to change position, and so as that each thereby stands perpendicular to the line drawn from its inward flank to the point that flank is to rest at in the new line.

2. Each division marches on directly in front, by its inward flank, to its proper point in the new line.

3. Each division successively on its inward flank arriving at the division preceding it (which is already halted in the line) dresses up, and forms truly in that line.

Each

Each change of position of the regiment or line may be considered as a general wheel of the whole, made on a point, either *in*, *before*, or *behind* the old line.—The regiment or line therefore breaks to which ever hand, and to which ever division it is to manœuvre to, or be led by: when to a flank, generally to that which is nearest to, and is first to enter any part of the new position: when a central division determines its movement, it breaks (to right and left) inwards, and faces such division, which makes its change of situation on its own ground.—When this *point* is in the old line, it must necessarily be within the regiment when single, or within a certain named regiment of a line, such regiment will therefore have to perform the change on a *fixed* point within itself, viz. on such division flank or central as is already rested at that point, and by making its other divisions, either by *flank* or *diagonal* marching, enter into the line; but all the other regiments will have the double operation of moving up to the new line, and then bringing their divisions upon it. When this point is *before* or *behind* the old line, every regiment whatever, single or connected, will have this double operation to perform.

S. 20. *Changes of Position of a Regiment.*

The regiment formed in line changes to a new position, either on a fixed point within itself, or on a distant point, which marks one of its future flanks, or where one of its central divisions is to be placed.

By

When on a fixed point, either flank or central.

Fig. 3.

1. By the diagonal march of divisions either to front or rear, which move on and line with the placed or fixed one, when it halts on its ground. (S. 70. 71.)

2. By breaking into open column, so as to face the fixed point. The divisions then march by their flank to front or rear into the new direction, and wheel up into line, when the column is prepared. (S. 36. 37.)

Fig. 5.

When on a distant point, and that the whole line is moveable.

Fig. 6. A.

1. By the Echellon wheel of divisions, and the subsequent march of the whole, till the one nearest to the new line arrives in it, and that the others move on and form to it. (S. 70. 71.)

Fig. 6. B.

2. By the breaking into open column to the one or other flank, and the immediate flank march by *three's* of all the divisions from the old line to the new one. (S. 40.)

Fig. 6. C.

3. By the march of the regimental column to the point where its *head* is to rest, and then by the flank marching of its divisions into line. (S. 37. 41.)

4. By

Fig. 6. F.

4. By the march of the regimental column to the point where its *rear* is to reſt, and the ſucceſſive wheeling of its diviſions into, and prolonging the line. (S. 42.)

Fig. 6. H.

5. By the march of the regimental column and its wheeling into the new line, at the point where one of its *central* diviſions is to reſt. (S. 43.)

Beſides the before, which are the moſt general modes by which changes of poſition ſhould be effected by the regiment, the open column, on arriving at its ground, may alſo be required to form in line in the following manner.

Fig. 7. 8. A. B. C.

6. When the column, having arrived perpendicularly or obliquely behind the line at the point where its *head* is to reſt, is there halted, the leading diviſion may be placed on the line, and each other diviſion be ordered to make ſuch a degree of wheel backward, as will enable it to march on in front, perpendicular to its proper point in the new line, where each ſucceſſively arrives and forms. This is a movement in column and a formation by the diagonal march. (S. 44.)

Fig. 6. D. 9.

7. The column arriving in the direction of the line, or in any direction oblique or perpendicular behind

hind the new line, and at the point where its *head* is to reſt, but which its rear is to paſs, may form by the wheel of the leading diviſion into the new line, and the ſucceſſive march of the other diviſions behind it, and behind each other, till they arrive at their ſeveral points of wheeling up. (S. 50.)

8. The column marching perpendicularly (or nearly ſo) towards the point where its *head* is to reſt, and being at a conſiderable diſtance from ſuch point, the leading diviſion proceeds at a ſlow pace only, the others oblique from the column, ſucceſſively move up to the leading diviſion, and the front being thus gradually increaſed, the whole regiment arrives at the ſame time on the line of formation. Fig. 6. E.

The column arriving behind any part of its ground, may alſo move up to cloſe column, and form in line by its deployments on the front, the rear, or on a central diviſion.

S. 21. *A Regiment broken into, and marching in open column,* muſt arrive at, and enter on the ground on which it is to form in line, either—in the DIRECTION of that line—PERPENDICULAR to that line—or in a direction more or leſs OBLIQUE, and betwixt the other two.

If

Fig. 9. A.

If the column is marching in the direction of the line, it will either enter where its head is to reſt or where its rear is to reſt.

If where its *head* is to reſt—the leading diviſion will wheel up into line, and the others march on behind it, and ſucceſſively wheel up, as in (S. 50.)

If where its *rear* is to reſt—it marches with its pivot flank, and at juſt diſtances along the line, till the rear diviſion is at its point, the whole then halt and wheel up into line, as in (S. 42.)

Fig 10.

If the column enters perpendicular or oblique to the new line, it will either enter where its head is to reſt, where its rear is to reſt, or at ſome intermediate point, where a central diviſion is to reſt.

If where its *head* is to reſt—the formation may be made as in (S. 41.) Fig. 11.

If where its *rear* is to reſt—the formation may be made, as in (S. 42.) Fig. 10.

If at an intermediate point, where a central diviſion is to reſt—the formation may be made, as in (S. 43.) Fig. 12.

Relative ſituation of old and new poſitions.

S. 32. *All new poſitions that a regiment or line can take with reſpect to the old one are*—— PARALLEL, or nearly ſo to the old—INTERSECTING, by themſelves or their prolongation, ſome part of the old line or its prolongation.

New

New parallel positions being necessarily to the front or rear of the old one, the regiment will, according to circumstances, take them up by the diagonal march, the flank march of divisions after wheeling into column; or the movement in open column to the new line, and its subsequent formation in it. Parallel.

New interfecting positions, which themselves cut the regiment, will be taken up by the diagonal march; or the flank march ranks by threes of divisions.——All other new positions, which themselves or their prolongation, interfect the old line, or its prolongation, will in general be taken up by the *march* in open column, and its subsequent formations when it arrives at the line: some such positions will, however, allow of and require being made by the Echellon march, or by the flank march of divisions.——In general, the regiment will break to the hand which is nearest to the new position, be conducted to its nearest point in the new line, and form on it as directed. Interfecting.

It is much to be remembered, that in changes of position in open or in Echellon column; it is only *one* squadron of one regiment, whether such regiment is single or part of a line, whose movements can be central. Every other squadron whatever, and every other regiment (except one in a line in central movements) manœuvre from a leading flank.

S. 23. *In changes of position by the open column.*—The whole regiment (as a general rule) is directed to General rule in breaking into open column.

to wheel the whole quarter circle into open column, although it may often ſeem an unneceſſary operation, and that diſengaging the heads of diviſions would anſwer the ſame purpoſe, where the change is to be performed by their *flank* marching.——Yet is this to be obſerved as the general mode, becauſe it is a poſitive and defined ſituation, from which every change can proceed; whereas all other modes are liable to uncertainty and miſtake; and the apparent going over a little unneceſſary ground, is a matter of no moment in point of time, and begets preciſion and correctneſs of execution.

This rule, which takes place for all the following diviſions of a column, will in ſome ſituations be diſpenſed with as to a leading diviſion, which often would have to wheel up again over the ſame ground, when the column is put in motion towards its new poſition.—A previous and ſeparate CAUTION from the chief of the regiment, may therefore when it is ſeen neceſſary, prevent this extra movement to the leading diviſion, and give it a more favourable ſituation in the direction in which it is to proceed.

Fig. 15.

Central changes—modes of breaking into column.

In central changes of poſition, within a regiment or line, and which are made by the movements of the open column, the regiment or line will in general break inwards into two open columns facing each other and the given point, ſo that one has its right in front, and the other its left.——From this ſituation, by the flank march of diviſions, or by the march in columns,

columns, its component parts move to their new position, and the central divisions which face each other, having there taken a double wheeling distance, the divisions wheel up into line.——The advantages of making central changes, by breaking *inwards*, so as the whole stand faced to the given division or divisions in two columns, are—that the universal rule of all bodies breaking, dressing, forming to whatever point they are led by, or manœuvred to, is observed. —That the taking of distances in the new general column are all from *before* and none from *behind*, which last is a matter of difficulty and delay.—That the parts of the line on each side of the central division or divisions work exactly in the same manner, and form in line by one and the same method. That the breaking inwards of the line (or the counter march of such part of an open column, as is before a given division, which counter-march of each division is the affair of a moment) gives these advantages.

In central changes, was the whole of a regiment or line to break to one hand, or part of a column not to counter-march—then whatever divisions of the central regiment were arranged before the named one would by flank marching place themselves again in column in the new line, taking their distances from *behind*—. Such entire regiments as were before the named division would march in separate columns of divisions, each from its head or outward flank, and enter into the new line, at the point where its *rear* or inward flank was to be placed, it must then in column prolong the line, and be halted the instant the rear arrived

arrived at the point where the head entered.—Although regiments and lines ſhould be prepared to change poſition in this manner, if ſo required, yet the central method is to be conſidered as the more general one, and practiſed accordingly.

Calculation of diſtances.

Field officers and adjutants muſt always recollect the number of yards which the front of a regiment, or any of its component parts occupy, and be enabled by the eye, as well as the pace of their horſes, quickly and nearly to aſcertain and give ſuch diſtances.—Every ſquadron leader muſt quickly judge the extent of his ſquadron; and every diviſion leader and marker of a pivot flank, the front of the diviſion which he regulates—practice and attention ſoon give accuracy in theſe points, which are an eſſential part of regimental inſtruction.——It has been already mentioned, that one yard nearly is to be allowed for each horſe and man, and therefore the front of a body is as many yards as files.

Ranks by three's.

The flank march ranks by three's of the ſquadron, half ſquadron, or diviſion, is ſo much employed, and ſo eſſential in the movements and changes of ſituation of the ſquadron, regiment, or the line, that it is to be principally attended to in their inſtruction, and much practiſed by the diſtinct bodies.——In that ſhape they are little or nothing extended, which is the moſt important of all circumſtances, and the ſeveral ranks are as cloſe up as they can, without interfering

fering or crowding.——They ſhould be conducted briſkly in all kind of varying directions; and at any moment when the word HALT is given, be found in a ſituation inſtantly to WHEEL up by three's, and form.

Three's right / left *Wheel!*
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

When a diviſion wheels to a flank ranks by three's it receives the words *Diviſion* (right or left) *Wheel! March!* on which each three wheels on its center man; and then *Halt! Dreſs!* to the pivot hand.

March!

At the ſecond word *March!* it moves off, and is conducted in any ordered direction, and at any pace.

Halt!
Three's wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

When its head arrives at the point of forming, it receives the words, *Halt! Three's wheel up! March! Halt! Dreſs!* to the pivot hand in column; and is then ready to march forward, or to wheel into line, if it is a diviſion of a column.

The words of command given by leaders of ſquadrons (and which firſt come from thoſe of the line

General obſervation.

and of regiments) are marked on the margin in CAPITALS.

The words of command given by leaders of half ſquadrons, diviſions, or ſub-diviſions, are marked on the margin in *Italics*.

S. 24. *When the Regiment or Line is formed and halted, and wheels forward to a Flank into open Column of Half Squadrons or Diviſions.*

CAUTION! { At the CAUTION, that the regiment will wheel forward (to the right or left) into open column of——! each ſquadron from its leading flank will ſend out a non-commiſſioned officer to mark the ſquare of the wheel.

MARCH! { At the word MARCH! repeated by leaders of ſquadrons, the line wheels up into the ordered diviſions, the leaders of ſquadrons giving the word HALT! DRESS!

HALT! DRESS! { which is done to the ſtanding flank: and the other proper pivot leaders immediately place themſelves on that flank of their reſpective

ſpective bodies.——In this ſituation the whole remains, although the pivots do not cover (which muſt be the caſe if the diviſions are unequal) nor is any one to move or attempt it, unleſs it is ſo ordered by the commander from the front.

Should it be required again to form in line on the ſame ground, the diviſions will go about, *ranks by three's*—*Wheel* back into the ſpaces they quitted, and again *front*.—Were they in ſuch ſituation to wheel forward, there would be falſe diſtances, and an ill formed line.

If the column is to begin and continue in march, it is not eſſential to make the pivots cover previous to their moving, but they will in the courſe of their march gradually do ſo, and they will alſo in the ſame manner acquire their true wheeling-up diſtances from each other; for each ſtarts with a diſtance, not equal to its own front, but to that of the diviſion which precedes it.

S. 25. *When the Regiment or Line wheels into open Column, either by reining back or by wheeling back.*

As it appears, that unleſs the diviſions of a line are perfectly equal, their pivots will not cover when they

wheel *forward* into open column, nor will their proper wheeling diſtances from each other be exact: and as theſe are circumſtances ſo eſſential for the march of a column, and for its ſubſequent formation into line, that they muſt be attained before accuracy in either can take place:——The formation of a column from line, by wheeling the diviſions *backward* inſtead of *forward*, will at once give theſe advantages, and it is thought may, in almoſt all ſituations of manœuvre, be made uſe of when the object is the prolongation of a given direction, and the after formation into line.

THREE'S ABOUT!—MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!
} The line goes to the right ABOUT, ranks by three's.

TO THE—WHEEL!—MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!
} The line WHEELS forward the quarter circle, by half ſquadrons or by diviſions into open column.

THREE'S ABOUT!—MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!
} The column comes ABOUT by three's, and dreſſes to the pivot flank.

In this manner the pivot files have (nearly) kept their ground and cover; the diſtance from diviſion to diviſion is equal to the front of each; the leaders place themſelves on the pivot flanks of diviſions; any ſmall irregularity of covering is eaſily corrected, and the column is in a ſituation either to form in line by wheeling up, or to move forward with exactneſs.

When

When the line breaks into open column by ſmall diviſions, and that the ground permits, this operation is performed by *reining back* on the pivot flank.

S. 26. *When the Regiment or Line, after having wheeled into open Column, marches to the Flank or in any other given direction.* Fig. 20, 17.

THE COLUMN!
MARCH!

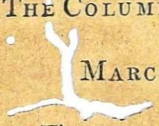


Fig. 20.

If the prolongation of the line on which the column ſtands is the object, ſuch line muſt be marked by perſons thrown forward in it, from diſtance to diſtance, who are ſucceſſively paſſed by the pivot leaders of the diviſions.

If the head of the column is ordered to change its direction, the new line muſt continue to be marked in the ſame manner that the old one was; and each diviſion, when it arrives at the place where the leading one changed into it, will ſucceſſively conform.

If a ſtraight line is not meant to be obſerved, the leader of the column will march by his eye; the other diviſions will follow his exact path at their juſt diſtances, and no advanced perſon need be ſent out to the front.

S. 27.

Fig. 16. 17. 18. S. 27. *When the Head of the open Column changes Direction on a moveable pivot* (S. 8.) *and enters on a line which it is to prolong.*

Before the head of a conſiderable column in *march* enters a ſtraight line which it is to prolong, and form upon, and whoſe direction has been previouſly aſcertained by the commander; a point of entry muſt be marked by a placed perſon (S), (who is to remain there till he is relieved) and alſo another point in it (r), at leaſt ſixty or ſeventy paces from the firſt perſon.—Three other perſons (m. n. o.) immediately and ſucceſſively prolong themſelves on (r. S.) as the original baſe, and place themſelves 150 paces from (S.) and from each other. Two of theſe perſons at leaſt having taken their ſtation by the time that the leading regiment enters the line, as ſoon as the head of it approaches the firſt of them, he gallops on; and anew alignes himſelf beyond the other two, and this operation each ſucceſſively repeats till the column *halts*.

CHANCE DIRECTION!

—*Shoulder forward!*

Forward!

The *head* of the column will in general be ſo led, as *gradually* to enter the new direction at or near the firſt given point (S.) and will then, by continuing its regular pace move along the line.—The other diviſions ſucceſſively enter in the ſame manner, and preſerving their juſt diſtances,

distances, pass with their pivots the several objects established in the new line, and thus cover from front to rear.

In this manner the *column* always marching on two advanced objects; the point of entry being fixed and remaining; the commanding officers of regiments moving correctly on the flank of their leading divisions; the adjutants occasionally stopping in the new line, as points which the pivots of their regiments are to pass—must correct any small inaccuracy of the march of the column, and keep the whole pivots in the general direction given by the advanced persons.

It is only when the column of manœuvre is marching in a straight alignement, that the commanding officer is invariably attached to the head division of his regiment; for in other situations of march, he need by no means remain fixed at its head, but be moveable on its flank, in order to watch over its general progress.

S. 28. *When the open Column wheels on a fixed Point into a new Alignement.* Fig. 19.

The alignement is entered by the leading division wheeling either to its *pivot* or *reverse* flank. In either case,

caſe, the pivot flank officers arrive on that line, and march along it; and when the line is formed by wheels up to the pivot flank, it will in the former inſtance (B) face towards the rear of the column, and in the latter inſtance (C) towards the head of the column.

Fig. 19. C. Fig. 10.

S. 29. When the open Column wheels on its halted reverse Flank into a new Alignement, and marches on it.

CAUTION TO

The new alignement being determined by placed objects, and the point of entry (c being marked, the leading officer who has marched his pivot flank on that point, when he arrives at a diſtance equal to the front of his diviſion from it, orders { right / or / left }

Right Wheel! *Wheel!* (according to whatever is the reverſe flank); and the wheel is made ſo that on the concluſion of it, at the word,

Halt! Dreſs! *Halt! Dreſs!* he himſelf ſhall be placed on the new alignement on the pivot of his diviſion, ready to give the

March! word *March!* as ſoon as the ſucceeding diviſion has arrived at the wheeling point.

Right Wheel! The officer of the second division gives his word *Wheel!* when he arrives at the ground which the first is quitting, and

Halt! Dreſs! then *Halt! Dreſs!* when the wheel is completed; in this situation he remains, till he perceives that the preceding division has gained from him a distance equal to the front of his division, he then instantly gives the word,

March! *March!* and follows in column. Each succeeding division observes the same directions, and the equality of pace being preserved, the column may continue its march in perfect order.

It is to be observed, that by whatever degree of wheel on a fixed flank, the *leading* division of a column enters on a new direction, it is never to move on till the succeeding one is come up to it, and on the instant of wheeling.

S. 30. *When the open Column wheels on its halted Pivot Flank into a new Alignement, and marches in it.* Fig. 19. B.

CAUTION! The leading division begins its wheel to the pivot flank on the alignement itself, when its pivot flank

Left wheel!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!

flank officer arrives at the point of wheeling (d), inſtead of (as in the preceding ſection) beginning at the diſtance of a diviſion ſhort of that point.

S. 31. When the open Column, composed of Divisions of unequal Strength, wheels to its reverse fixed Flank, into a new Alignement.

Fig. 20.

CAUTION!

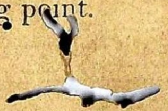
The pivot flank continues to direct, till the leading diviſion arrives in its full front, behind its proper wheeling ground and at a due diſtance from it. The word.

Right wheel!

{right / or / left} *Wheel!* being then given, the reverſe flank (c) of that diviſion ſtops, and the other one completes the wheel, ſo that at the next words, *Halt! Dreſs! March!* the pivot officer may be exactly placed on and prolong the new line of direction; they thus ſucceed each other, obſerving that a ſtronger diviſion (a) wheels ſhort of the ground of its preceding

ing weaker one (b), by the ſpace of as many files as it exceeds that preceding one; and a weaker diviſion overpaſſes the ground of its preceding one, by the extent of as many files as it is deficient: in both caſes, after the wheel, the diviſions will have retained the ſame relative ſituations as before its commencement, and the pivot flanks will ſtill cover.

If the wheels are made to the *pivot* flank, then the inequality of diviſions does not operate, and they commence on the arrival of each pivot at the wheeling point.



S. 32. When a Regiment or Line already formed is to wheel into open Column, and prolong its Direction. Fig. 21.

Three perſons (m. n. o.) take their ſtations beyond the flank, to be prolonged as points of *march*—the diviſions ſhould be wheeled back into open column—the column moves on the points of march, and the adjutants, by making occaſional halts in the true line which they can take up from the advanced perſons, and from each other, bound the pivot flanks of the column, and preſerve it in its proper direction.

Fig. 23.

S. 33. *When the open Column halts in the new Direction, in order to wheel up into Line.*

When the first or the last division, according to circumstances, arrives at a given point in the alignement, the whole column HALTS! by order; and if the covering and dressing of the pivot flank leaders want any correction, it is instantly made from the front division towards the rear, along the placed objects that have determined the alignement.——The files of men next to the pivot leaders, are to follow and partake of all their movements, and neither to crowd on them, or remain opened from them: therefore, whenever such leaders cover, and are well aligned, their adjoining files will be the same, and can want no farther correction.

The column receives the word, HALT! when its leading division is at a wheeling distance short of the point where its flank is to be placed.

Fig. 22.

S. 34. *When Part of the open Column halts in the new Direction, and the remaining Divisions are ordered to enter it by Flank marching.*

HALT! When the head of a regimental column arrives at a given point, the whole is ordered to HALT! — Such divisions of

THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!

Halt! Dreſs!

MARCH!

Halt!—Three's Wheel up!

March!

Halt! Dreſs!

of the column as are ſtill in the old direction are then ordered to WHEEL to their pivot flank ranks by three's——— They MARCH! and ſucceſſively place their pivots on the new line at their juſt wheeling diſtances, which are aſcertained for them by the perſons they timeouſly detach for that purpoſe (S. 36. 41.)— The whole pivots being thus covered and dreſſed in the new direction, the column is prepared for wheeling up into line.

Where the column is conſiderable, and conſiſts of ſeveral regiments, and that ſome of them are not arrived in the intended line, then ſuch part of the laſt entered regiment, as is not in the line, will gain it by the flank march of diviſions; and each other regiment that has not entered, will march in a ſeparate column towards its own *head* point in the line, and when near it, its particular diviſions *wheel*, ranks by three's to the flank, and then eſtabliſh themſelves in open column on the new line (as in S. 36. 41.) or if ſuch regiments enter at their *rear* points, they will then prolong the line, till the whole are upon it (S. 29. 30. 42.) which is the beſt general method.

S. 35. *When the open Column, halted on the Ground on which it is to form, wheels up into Line.*

WHEEL INTO LINE!

Diſtances being juſt, and pivot leaders being truly covered—the caution is given, WHEEL INTO LINE! when the then pivot flank leaders place themſelves each on the *reverſe* flank of ſuch diviſion, as by its wheel up brings them to their true place in ſquadron. The leading diviſion of each ſquadron ſends out a perſon to line himſelf with the pivot files.—At the word, MARCH! the whole wheel up into line, which is marked by the pivot men, and alſo bounded by the horſes heads of the faced markers of it.——HALT! DRESS! is then given (as well as the other words by each ſquadron leader) the inſtant before the completion of the wheel, and eyes are then turned to the ſtanding flank (to which the correction of the ſquadron is made) and remain

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

ſo

so till otherwise ordered; so that a line formed by wheels to the left, will remain with eyes to the left; and one formed by wheels to the right, will remain with eyes to the right.

During the wheel up, the ſtandard moves to its place in ſquadron, and at the halt, every individual has gained his proper poſt.

After the HALT, DRESS! each leader inſtantly corrects the dreſſing of his ſquadron; but if that of the regiment is defective, and muſt be remedied, then the commanding officer orders EYES to be turned to that which was the leading flank when in column (or he may do it from the other flank) and a field officer from thence, by riding quickly along the front, and without diſplacing the pivot men (who before the wheel up muſt have been truly poſted) makes ſuch ſmall internal corrections as the general line requires.

CHANGES of POSITION of the REGIMENT from LINE, by movements of the open column, are made either on a *fixed* point within the regiment, or on a *diſtant* point without it.

ON A FIXED POINT.

Fig. 24. C.

S. 36. *When the Regiment forms open Column of Divisions, behind a placed Flank Division, and throws back the other Flank.*

Two perſons are advanced immediately before the flank diviſion, to mark, and who face to the determined line on which the pivots of the column are to ſtand.

CAUTION!	The flank diviſion is *placed* perpendicular to that line, and with its pivot upon it.
DIVISIONS, RIGHT WHEEL! MARCH! HALT, DRESS!	The line WHEELS up into open column of ſimilar diviſions, towards the placed diviſion.
THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL! MARCH! HALT, DRESS!	The diviſions WHEEL the quarter circle, each ranks by three's, the (reverſe, and not the pivot) flank leading, and the conductor being there placed.

The

MARCH!
Halt!---Three's Wheel up!
March!
Halt, Dreſs!

The diviſions MARCH, and form in open column behind the head diviſion and each other, preſerving their wheeling and interval diſtances, and placing their pivot flanks on the new line, which is taken from the original objects in it, and prolonged to each of them by their own detached perſons.—— The *pivots* being covered and dreſſed and diſtances juſt from front to rear of the column, the whole is in a ſituation to *wheel* into line.

The better to aſcertain thoſe flank points, the coverer of each pivot leader will ſucceſſively, as they approach the new line, gallop on and place himſelf upon it, at the wheeling diſtance of his diviſion from the one before him, facing to the head of the column, and covering exactly thoſe

that have already taken their places therein.—— The coverer thus ſtanding on the ſpot which his leader is afterwards to occupy, ſuch and every other leader, when he arrives at the line, ſtops there himſelf, allows his diviſion to paſs on behind its marker, till its *rear* comes up: he then *Halts, fronts!* it, and *dreſſes* and cloſes it to its pivot marker on the line, ---It is to be obſerved, that in this caſe the diviſions *croſs* the new line, in order to place their pivots upon it.

Halt!—Three's Wheel up!
March!
Halt, Dreſs!

All diviſions, that by flank marching mean to form in open column on a new line, ſhould take particular care that the laſt part of their movement, and at leaſt for a ſpace equal to their own extent, is made in a line not oblique, but ſquare and perpendicular to the line of pivots, for thereby they will at once form up, firm, compact, and on their true ground; and, therefore, in the firſt part of their march, the head of their diviſions ſhould not be directed on their future pivot point, but rather wide of it, ſo as to allow for the ſquare entry of each on its forming ground.

If

If when from line, diviſions wheel into open column *towards* a ſtanding diviſion, and the flanks of the diviſion next ſuch ſtanding one may not thereby be ſufficiently diſengaged for whatever movement is immediately to be required, ſuch diviſion (alone) may be ordered only to half wheel, quarter wheel, or rein back a flank, as may beſt anſwer the propoſed end.

S. 37: When the Regiment forms open Column of Divisions before a Flank Division, and throws forward the other Flank.

Two perſons are placed behind the flank diviſion, Fig. 24. B. in order to give the determined line on which the pivots of the column are to ſtand, as directed in the preceding movement.

CAUTION! — The *flank* diviſion by wheeling, or countermarching, is placed with its pivot on, and perpendicular to, that line, and in ſuch ſituation it makes front towards the rear.

DIVISIONS, RIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS! — The line WHEELS up into open column of diviſions towards the placed diviſion.

THREE's, LEFT WHEEL!
MARCH!
Halt! Dreſs!

} The diviſions WHEEL the quarter circle, each ranks by three's, the pivot flank leading.

MARCH!
Halt!—Three's Wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

} The diviſions MARCH and form open column as before—In this caſe, as their pivot flanks lead, they do not *croſs* the new line, but arrive at and place them upon it; the pivot leader himſelf there remaining.—The pivots being covered and diſtances juſt, the column ſtands ready to WHEEL into line, or to march on.

Fig. 25.

S. 38. *When the Regiment forms open Column of Diviſions, before and behind a central Diviſion.*

The *central* diviſion is named, and alſo the wings, as they are to be before or behind it.

The *new* direction is taken, and the central diviſion placed (as in S. 36.)

The

CAUTION!
DIVISIONS WHEEL INWARDS!
MARCH!—HALT! DRESS!

The line is ordered to WHEEL inwards by diviſions of ſquadron towards the placed diviſion, and thus ſtands in two open columns facing each other.

THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!
Halt! Dreſs!
MARCH!

The diviſions WHEEL ranks by three's, both to the ſame flank, viz. their leading one, which in thoſe that are to move to the front is the *pivot* flank, and in thoſe that are to move to the rear, is the *reverſe* flank.

Halt!—Three's wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

The part of the line, which leads with its reverſe flank, forms in column *behind* the placed diviſion (as in S. 36.); the part which leads with its pivot flank forms in column *before* the placed diviſion (as in S. 37.); and its head diviſion is to remember, that if the line is afterwards

wards to be formed, it will take a double wheeling diſtance from the diviſion it fronts, as they would then wheel up towards each other; but if the column is to move on, it will take only ſingle diſtance.

In this formation the *pivot* line ſhould be ſufficiently marked by detached perſons, both before and behind the central diviſion, and the pivots of the wing, which forms behind it, will take their general direction from the pivots of thoſe that form before it, as theſe laſt have the greateſt facility in forming in conſequence of their pivot flanks leading.

When the *whole* are thus in column facing the central diviſion, if the line is to be formed, the whole will WHEEL up to their pivots (S. 35.)——If the column is to march, the neceſſary part of it will COUNTER-MARCH its diviſions, (S. 45.) and then the whole can move on.

S. 39. When the Line of ſeveral Regiments forms open Column on a flank or central Diviſion.

The given diviſion is *placed* as already directed, and the whole line WHEEL up in diviſions towards it.

The

The regiment to which such division belongs, by the flank march of its divisions, ARRIVES in the new column (as in S. 41, 42, 43.)——The other regiments MARCH off separately in regimental columns, to the points which their adjutants have prepared for their entry in the new line, they there enter at the *head* or *rear* point, as directed (more generally at their rear point) (S. 41. 42.) and *stand* in open column.—The regiments, as they arrive and are successively ready, *wheel* up into line.

ON A DISTANT POINT.

S. 40. *When the Regiment changes to a distant Position in Front or Rear, by the Flank marching of the open Column, and that this Position is either parallel or oblique to the one it quits.* Fig. 6. B. Fig. 14.

DIVISIONS—WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The regiment breaks into column of divisions, to which ever hand the new position out flanks the old one, for to that hand will the whole have to incline during the march; and if it does not sensibly out flank,

flank, then the regiment will break to the hand next to the point of interſection of the two lines, for that hand is neareſt to, and will, in general, be the firſt to enter any part of the new poſition.

THREES——WHEEL! MARCH! *Halt! Dreſs!*

The regiment ſtanding in open column is ordered to WHEEL its diviſions by *three's* to a flank.—The leader of the ſecond diviſion has then a direction given him, which croſſes the new line at the point (o) as near as can be judged where the flank of that diviſion is to be placed. The whole are then put in motion.——The leader of the ſecond diviſion marches in his given direction at a ſteady pace; the commander of the regiment remains with the head diviſion (c), and by making it gradually advance or keep back, regulates the heads of all the others during the march, as they endeavour to continue themſelves

MARCH!

Fig. 30. 14.

Halt!
Threes wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

ſelves nearly in the prolonged line of the heads of the two leading diviſions; but at any rate they are not to be before them: and when thoſe two diviſions *halt* their pivots in the line, the others, without hurrying arrive ſucceſſively in the new direction, and ſtand in open column at their juſt wheeling diſtances.—When the head of the column is within 60 or 70 yards of the new line (its direction being already prepared) the pivot markers gallop out, and mark the pivot flanks of their ſeveral diviſions.

In this manner the commander, who is himſelf with, and conducts the two leading diviſions, moves them in the direction that beſt anſwers his views, and at once takes up any poſition, and to any front, that is neceſſary. As circumſtances change his intentions, he may, at every inſtant, vary and direct them upon new points of march, the other diviſions of the column conforming (without the neceſſity of ſending particular orders) to whatever alterations of direction the *head* may take; and the commander conducting that head ſo as to enable the rear to comply with its movements without hurry.——During the tranſition, the wheel-

ing

ing diſtances ſhould be nearly preſerved by the diviſions; but at any rate great care muſt be taken that they are correct, juſt before entering the new line.

When the diviſions in this manner gain a new poſition by flank marching, they always break to the flank which is neareſt to that poſition, and place their pivot flanks upon it.

When the new line (c) out-flanks towards the point of interſection, then the regiment breaking to that hand will have its head (a) nearer to the new line than its rear.——When the new line B out flanks from the point of interſection, then the regiment breaking from that point will have its head (b) farther from the new line than its rear; but in this caſe the diviſion muſt be ſo directed during the march, by making a kind of gradual wheel forward upon the rear, that the head (b) ſhall enter the new line before the rear arrives upon it.

When the line conſiſts of ſeveral regiments, the directing one changes its poſition in the above manner, but the others break into open column towards it, and each moves in regimental column to its *rear* (or head) point of entry in the new line. (S. 41. 42.)

S. 41.

S. 41. When the Regiment changes Position, by breaking into open Column of Divisions or Half Squadrons, marches to the Point in a new Line where its Head is to be placed, and enters on the Line by the Flank March of its Divisions. Fig. 6. C.

HALT!

The pivot flank of the column being directed on the person (c) who marks the flank point in the new line, the whole will HALT when arrived within a few yards of him, and a point of direction (d) 60 or 70 yards beyond c, is supposed also to be ascertained.—The whole divisions are then WHEELED by three's (to the right or left as is necessary to conduct into the new line) and the pivot markers move out to mark their points for each division. (S. 36.)

THREE'S—WHEEL! MARCH! *Dress!* Fig. 11.

MARCH! *Halt! Three's wheel up! March! Halt! Dress!*

At the word MARCH! the whole divisions move by their flanks; the head one places its pivot at a wheeling distance from the person (c), and every

every other one in the manner before directed, arrange themſelves behind the head one and behind each other; their flanks being corrected by the commanding officer, they are then ready to *wheel* up into line.

The flank which the diviſions *break* to by *three's*, and move from, will depend on which ſide of the perſon (c) they are to be arranged, and which way the line is to face.

S. 42. *When the Regiment changes Poſition by breaking into open Column of Diviſions, or Half Squadrons, marching to the Point in the new Line, where its Rear is to be placed, and entering on and prolonging the Line, by the ſucceſſive Wheels of its Diviſions.*

Fig. 6. F.

Fig. 10.

Beſides the perſon who marks the point of *entry*, two advanced points of march muſt be given—the column then enters by the ſucceſſive wheels of its diviſions and moves

HALT! | moves on (as in S. 29. 30.) and when its laſt diviſion is at its point, it receives the word HALT! and pivots being corrected, the whole are ready to wheel up into line.

When a regimental open column enters a new poſition, where its rear flank is to be placed.—*If the wheels are made to the pivot* hand, it receives the word, HALT! when its rear diviſion has juſt compleated its wheel into the new direction. *If the wheels are made to the reverſe* hand, it receives the word HALT! when the laſt diviſion but one has completed its wheel into the new direction, and the laſt diviſion itſelf, by the flank march by three's, places its pivot flank at the given point.

When an open column, marching on a ſtraight line, is to form at a point where its rear flank is to be placed, it will receive the word HALT! when the pivot of its rear diviſion arrives at that point.

By theſe operations of entering a new line at the *head*, or (more generally) at the *rear* point, will the diſtant changes of a conſiderable line be commonly made; each regiment breaking from the old line, and entering the new one in ſeparate column; the whole of which movement may be made at any required pace. The regiments within themſelves are at all times collected; there can hardly be any impediments from ground (where it is poſſible to move at all) that can

prevent the tranſit of the regimental column from the one point to the other; the line is taken up juſt by placing the pivot flanks upon it, and the diſtances are moſt correct, being taken up in all caſes from the front of the column.——Should the preſence and nearneſs of an enemy make it too precarious thus to change poſition in detached columns, the *Echellon* (or diagonal) marches muſt take place, as far as they apply to ſituation.

S. 43. *When the Regiment changes Position by breaking into open Column, marching to the Point in the new Line, where a central Division is to be placed, and there entering on the Line.*

Fig. 6.—H.
Fig. 12.

——*Wheel!*
Halt! Dreſs!
March!

The leading diviſion of the column having at the given point *wheeled* into the alignement, followed by the others, as far as the named central diviſion; the word, HALT! is then given, and the column ſtops.

HALT!

THREE'S WHEEL!

Such diviſions as have already wheeled into the alignement, being now at their proper points, remain ſo.—Such diviſions

MARCH! / HALT! DRESS! — divisions as are still in the old direction are ordered to WHEEL by three's, to the flank which conducts to their place in the new line, and the markers move forward.

MARCH! / *Halt!* / *Three's—wheel up!* / *March!* / *Halt! Dreſs!* — At the command to MARCH! they all move and *halt* with their pivot flanks on it, ready to WHEEL up into line. (S. 34. 42.)

This movement includes both the operations of a regiment as entering a new line, where its rear is to reſt, and where its front is to reſt.

S. 44. *When the Regiment changes Position by breaking into open Column, marching to the Point in the new Line where its Head Division is to be placed, and on which its Rear Divisions form by the diagonal March of each.* Fig. 8. 2. Fig. 7. A. B.

HALT! — The column will advance to the ſpot where its leading diviſion is to be placed, and will then receive the word HALT!—The leading divi-

 ſion

ON THE—REIN BACK!

MARCH!

Halt! Dreſs!

MARCH!

Shoulder forward!

Halt! Dreſs!

ſion will then more accurately be placed on the new line, and each of the other diviſions will be ordered to WHEEL BACK on its reverſe flank, as much as is neceſſary to place that flank perpendicular to its point in the new line.—The conducting officers having placed themſelves on that flank, the whole will MARCH and ſucceſſively form up to the leading diviſion by the diagonal movement. (S. 71.)—In this manner the diviſions of the column arrive in full front one after the other, in the new line; and that line muſt face the ſame way that the column did.

If the column halts perpendicular (A) to the new line, its diviſions will wheel back one-eighth of the circle or a half wheel.—If the column halts oblique (B) to the new line, the diviſions will proportionally wheel ſo as to be placed perpendicular to their future lines of march.

1. *If the line was to be formed on the rear diviſion of the column*—that diviſion would remain placed, the others would wheel ABOUT by three's---Wheel BACK on the pivot flanks of the column, as being thoſe which conduct into line---MARCH and then HALT---

wheel

wheel *about*; ſucceſſively, and *dreſs*, in the line of the rear diviſion.

2. *If the line was to be formed on the rear diviſion, but facing to the rear*---the whole column would firſt countermarch, each diviſion by files, and then proceed as in forming on a front diviſion.

3. *If the line was to be formed on a central diviſion of the column*—that diviſion would ſtand faſt, or make ſuch change on its own center as might be required—thoſe in front of it would be ordered to wheel ABOUT by three's—the whole except the central diviſion would wheel back the named degree; thoſe in its front, on the proper pivot flanks of the column, and thoſe in its rear on the reverſe flanks, ſuch being the conducting flanks into line.——The whole would then march into line with the central company (as in S. 71. .)——If the column was a retiring one, and the line was to front to the rear, the diviſions muſt each countermarch before the formation began, and the head would be thrown back, and the rear forward.

THE CHANGES OF POSITION OF A COLUMN, are the ſame as thoſe of a LINE, after that line has broken into column; only the wheels from line into column, and from column into line, are not included.

Fig. 27.

S. 45. *When the Open Column changes its Front and leading Flank by the Countermarch of its Divisions, each on its own Ground.*

DIVISIONS WILL COUNTERMARCH! FROM THE — BY THE REAR FILE!

MARCH!

Halt! Front! Dreſs!

The column being halted, the pivot coverer takes exactly the place of his leader, but ſtands with his horſe facing to the *rear*.——The whole diviſions then FILE from their reverſe flanks, each by its own rear, and ſuch flank (now to become its pivot one) is brought up, the front rank man to the ſtationed perſon. The following files *cloſe* in to their leaders, the column ſtands ſquare, but facing to its former rear, and the coverer reins back to make place for the proper flank leader.—The column has thus changed its front and leading flanks.

In the countermarch, the filing is always from the flank which is not the pivot, but is to become ſuch, and the conducting officers will lead out to a diſtance of half the front of their diviſions before they begin to countermarch.

This countermarch of each diviſion is an evolution of great utility. It is equivalent to the WHEEL ABOUT of

of each diviſion of the open column, but without altering the line of pivots, or their true covering. It at once changes the front of a column. It enables a column marching in an alignement to return along that ſame line, and to take ſuch new poſitions in it as circumſtances may require, without inverting the front of the line.—It applies to the half, and quarter, as well as full and open column. In many ſituations of forming from column into line, it becomes a neceſſary previous operation.

When a column has thus countermarched by diviſions, unleſs the diviſions are equal, the diſtances will not be the true wheeling up ones, but will be ſuch as are equal to the front of the preceding diviſion, and therefore the true diſtances muſt be regained before the diviſions can truly wheel up into line.

S. 46. *When the Open Column changes its leading Flank, by bringing up the Rear Division to the Front, ſucceſſively followed by each other.* Fig. 28 A.

If the right of the regiment is in front, the left to be brought up, and the column to continue to advance. The whole is ordered to

HALT!

CAUTION!

Three's Right Wheel!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!
Halt!

Three's wheel up!—March!

Halt! Dreſs!
March!

Three's Right Wheel!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!
Halt!
Three's wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!

HALT! At the caution LEFT WING to the front, the leader of the left (the rear) diviſion immediately orders it, *Three's Right Wheel! March!* till his left flank can freely paſs the right flank of the others. He then commands, *Halt! Wheel up! March!* cloſe by the right flank of the diviſion then preceding him, he himſelf being now on the right, which becomes his pivot flank.

The officer commanding his preceding diviſion as ſoon as the other approaches him, orders, *Three's Right Wheel! March!* behind the now leading one.—*Halt! Wheel up!* when he covers, and then *March!* when at the due wheeling diſtance. All the other diviſions ſucceſſively perform the ſame operation, and when the right diviſion has taken its place in the rear, the whole

whole column is in perfect order, and proceeding in whatever direction is given to it.

If the column before this operation ſtands cloſed to half or quarter diſtance, then each diviſion proceeds as above directed, and takes its diſtance from its preceding one before it moves on. Fig. 28. B.

This operation is often required in taking up original poſitions from column of march. It changes the leading flanks of a regiment or a more conſiderable column, and enables it to enter on a line which unforeſeen circumſtances require it ſhould prolong.—It permits regimental columns, aſſembled at a rendezvous, to march off from whatever flank is moſt advantageous, for each to enter on its line of formation.—It prepares a column which has expected to form by wheels to its left, to form by wheels to its right, without inverting its order. In a column compoſed of ſeveral regiments, where an inverſion of the regiments, but not of the wings of the line, is meant to be prevented; then each regiment ſeparately will perform this operation; but if the inverſion alſo of the wings is to be avoided, then the whole column will proceed, as if it was a ſingle regiment.

It muſt be obſerved, that the leading diviſion comes out generally on the ſide to which front is naturally made, becauſe the diviſions which are free can at any time

time wheel into line, while the others are marching behind it.

At the ſame time it may be obſerved, that if the line on which the pivots of the column ſtand is neceſſarily to be prolonged, that end will be beſt attained by the diviſions coming out to the other ſide, viz. to their pivot hand.

Fig. 29. C.

THREE'S ABOUT WHEEL! &c.

MARCH!
Three's—Wheel! &c.

March!

Three's Wheel up! &c.
March!

If the column is to change its wings on the ground on which it then ſtands. The rear diviſion proceeds as already directed: all the others wheel by three's ABOUT! and MARCH on towards the place from whence the leſt moved. When the ſecond diviſion arrives at the firſt, it *wheels three's!* to the flank—*Marches!* behind the leading one; *Halts! Wheels up!* and *Marches!* on, when at its due diſtance. In this manner all the reſt proceed, till the firſt and laſt diviſion of the column have exchanged places, only that the whole column is removed a diſtance to one flank, of a ſpace equal to the front of its leading diviſion.

S. 47. When the Column changes its leading Flank by the Divisions marching through each other from Rear to Front. Fig. 29. D.

DIVISIONS—PASS! MARCH! *Halt!*

Supposing the column standing marched from the right—at the word DIVISIONS (to the right and left) PASS! MARCH! all the divisions (except the last) do open by passaging half to each flank, a space equal to their own front, sufficient to allow a division to march through.

March! Incline inwards! March! Forward!

The last division *Marches!* on, through the others, and as soon as its rear rank arrives at the front rank of the one next it, that division closes in by inclining marches, and follows at its due distance.—In this manner they succeed each other till the column is formed, as marched off from the left, and continues to advance.

If the ground of the column is not to be changed by this operation.—The divisions (except the

CAUTION!—MARCH!
Halt! Dreſs!
MARCH!

Wheel about inwards!
Forward!

the last) will wheel about OUTWARDS, by half-diviſions. The whole will receive the word MARCH! the leading one proceeds towards the front through the opening, the others towards the rear, and as each arrives at its preceding and advancing diviſion, it in due time *Wheels* very briſkly its ſubdiviſions inwards, and follows at its proper diſtance in open column, till the leading and cloſing diviſions have exchanged places.

The above method of countermarch is more calculated for a parade than for the general movements of a regiment, but preſerves the column on its original line.

S. 48. When the Regiment in open Column of Diviſions changes its Poſition, on a fixed Front, Rear or Central Diviſion.

1. *If on a front diviſion.*—That diviſion is placed with its pivot flank on and perpendicular to the new direction, and points before it and behind it are given

as

as ordered for the regiment.—The others *Wheel!* to a flank by three's; *March!* and cover it in the new line. (S. 36. 37.)

2. *If on a rear diviſion.* That diviſion will be placed—each other diviſion of the column will countermarch by file. The change will then be made as on a front diviſion. (S. 36. 37.) The diviſions of the column will again each countermarch, the change will have been thus completed, and the column is in a ſituation to wheel up into line, or to move on. Fig. 24.

3. *If on a central diviſion.* That diviſion (a) will be placed perpendicular to, and with its pivot flank on the new direction; and points (c, b) before it and behind it are given, where the pivots of its adjoining diviſions are to be placed. All ſuch as were before it countermarch and face it. The change will be made before it and behind it (as in S. 38.) The diviſions that countermarched will again countermarch; and the column will ſtand formed in the new direction. Fig. 25.

Should it be intended to form the line immediately after making the change of poſition, in that caſe the diviſion which faces to, and is next the placed one, would take care to *halt* in the new poſition with a *double* diſtance from the placed one, and the line would be immediately formed by the *wheel up* of its diviſions, without making the ſecond countermarch. But when the column, after changing poſition, is to proceed in the new direction, and therefore to be coun-

countermarched in part; in that case *single* distance only is to be taken, and a previous caution is given accordingly.

From a line or from open column.—The divisions of a column may certainly arrange themselves anew *before* any named one, without countermarching, or without facing to it; but the difficulty of taking just distances, and covering of pivots, is thereby increased.

1. *If from line.*—The divisions would wheel up *from* the given one, and march from their *pivot* flanks. When arrived on the line, they must take their distances and dressing from the *rear*, which increases the difficulty.

2. *If from column.*—They would move in the same manner from their pivot flanks, and take their ground before the named division.

This mode takes place in the formation of the close column from line; but there the accuracy of distances is not difficult to attain.

S. 49. *When the Regiment in open Column of Divisions, changes its Situation to a distant Position in its Front, Rear, or to a Flank.*

1. *If to its front.*—The column will march forward to ſome given point in that line, and then enter it according to one of the preſcribed modes, at which its *head, central,* or *rear* diviſion is to ſtand. (S. 41. 42. 43.) Fig. 11. 10. 22.

2. *If to its rear.*—Each diviſion of the column will countermarch, and it will then proceed as having the poſition in its front. (S. 41. 42. 43.) Fig. 10. 11. 22.

3. *If to either flank.*—The diviſions will gain the new poſition by a flank march of three's; or if the poſition is a diſtant one, the head of the column will march towards it, and enter it as a poſition in front, (S. 40. 41. 42. 43.) Fig. 30.

S. 50. *When the open Column halts and forms in line to the leading Diviſion, and facing either to the Front or Rear, by the Diviſions ſucceſſively paſſing behind the leading One, and each other.* Fig. 6. D.

HALT! The column arrives in the direction of, or in any direction oblique or perpendicular behind the line, and HALTS. Fig. 9. A.

—The

—The leading diviſion either remains on its ground, or wheels to its reverſe flank, or wheels about on its reverſe flank, according to the poſition to be taken.

MARCH!
——*Wheel!*
Halt! Dreſs!
March!
——*Wheel!*
Halt! Dreſs!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

All the pivot leaders place themſelves on the *reverſe* flank of the diviſions, and eyes are turned to them. The head diviſion ſtanding faſt, the others are put in *motion*, and each diviſion ſucceſſively *wheels* and paſſes cloſe behind the head diviſion, and again *wheels* when oppoſite its place, *marches* up, and *halts* to the ſtanding part of the line, which is properly prolonged for the correction of their dreſſing.

The diviſions thus ſucceſſively come into line, making their wheels rapidly and ſharp, ſo as not to impede the following of the column.

This formation occurs when the direction of the march is nearly in the prolongation of the line, and when a regiment arriving on the flank of a line already formed, has to lengthen out that line.

S. 51. When the Regiment in Open Column forms Line, facing to its Rear, on any Division. Fig. 9. B.

1. *If on its front division.*---That division wheels about on its reverse flank, and forms as prescribed (S. 50. 41.)

2. *If on a rear division.*---The divisions of the column each countermarches, and the formation becomes the same as to the front (in S. 50. 41.)

3. *If on a central division.*---That division is wheeled to its reverse flank, and placed perpendicular to, and with its pivot on the new line.——The divisions that were in *front* of it countermarch.——The column will then change its position *before* and *behind* it (as in S. 38.) and being thus prepared, will *wheel* up into line. Fig. 25.

S. 52. When the Regiment in open Column is to form to the reverse Flank.

If the regiment is required suddenly to be formed on the ground on which it then stands, the *reverse* flanks of the divisions will quickly be covered, and

wheel up into line on thoſe flanks. In this ſituation, the diviſions of the regiment will be inverted.

If no inverſion is to take place, the formation will be a ſucceſſive one; by the head diviſion wheeling to the reverſe hand, and halting, and the others marching on paſt it, and ſucceſſively wheeling up. (S. 50.)

When the head of a column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its pivot hand, or by the flank march of its diviſions from its reverſe hand, the formation made on that line by the wheeling up the diviſions, will front towards the *rear* of the column.——When the head of the column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its reverſe hand, or by the flank march of its diviſions from its pivot hand; the formation made on that line by wheeling up, will front the ſame way as the *head* of the column did when advancing to the line.

Fig. 19. 23.

The open column forms in line on its front, rear, or central diviſion, by the Echellon march (as in S. 44.)

The open column cloſes to cloſe column on any named diviſion, and forms in line by the deployments of the cloſe column.

S. 53.

S. 53. *Change of Front, by the Countermarch of the Squadron, Regiment, or Line.*

The countermarch changes the front and flanks of a body, and faces it to a rear, and is equivalent to a wheel of the half circle made on any of its parts or points.——It is *ſucceſſive*, (the body being halted) by each of its parts wheeling ſucceſſively on its own ground as it comes to its turn.——Or *progreſſive* (the body being in motion) by each part wheeling, when it comes up to the point at which the leading part wheeled, and begun the countermarch. In the firſt caſe; the body muſt ſhift its ground a ſpace at leaſt equal to its front. In the ſecond, it will perform this operation of the countermarch on its original ground, exchanging flanks and fronts.

The countermarch from one flank to the other may be made either before or behind the body.---When from both flanks, it will be made both before and behind the body.——Markers will always be placed, to give the preciſe ground on which the countermarch is to be made.---The column of countermarch muſt at no rate improperly lengthen out, and the wheels of its parts muſt be firm and rapid.

Squadron.

1. *The ſquadron will countermarch from either flank* Fig. 2
—by file; ranks by two's or ranks by three's, in the

manner prescribed for the divisions of a column. (S. 45.)

2. *The squadron will countermarch from both flanks on its center*---by file, or ranks by two's.---From the right flank behind the rear rank; from the left flank before the front rank, till they arrive on each others ground, which has been preserved by marking persons: the following files or two's front, and close in to their leaders, the standard turns about on its own ground, and the half squadrons dress to it.

3. *The squadron will countermarch from one flank by sub-divisions.*—Sub-divisions will wheel to the flank. The leading one will then wheel the half circle, and proceed along the flank of the squadron, by the sub-divisions of which it is followed, till the flanks have exchanged places. The whole being then in column, wheel to their pivots into line.

4. *The squadron will countermarch on its center by sub-divisions.*—One half squadron wheels about by three's—each half squadron wheels inwards by sub-divisions, and the standard faces about.—Sub-divisions of the half squadrons move on, and wheel successively into their places beyond the standard.—The half squadron that wheeled by three's, again wheels about; and the squadron stands faced to the rear on its former ground.

5. *The squadron will change front to the rear by the wheels of half squadrons.*—One half squadron advances a little more than its own length, and halts.—

Both

Both half ſquadrons wheel about inwards.—The retired half ſquadron moves up and joins the other. —A half ſquadron or diviſion, or any ſmall body, may change front in the ſame manner, by the wheels of its half parts.

6. *The ſquadron changes front by wheeling on its center.*—Half the ſquadron goes about ranks by three's.—The ſquadron wheels about on its ſtandard. The half ſquadron comes about by three's, and the ſquadron is fronted to its former rear. Half ſquadrons or diviſions may change front in the ſame manner.

Regiments.

The regiment may countermarch from one or from both flanks, by the wheels of diviſions, ſub-diviſions, ranks by three's or two's: and the ſquadrons of regiments will be mindful of the operation of their interval diſtances, by whatever kind of column they move—or it may countermarch on its center, or any other point by ſub-diviſions—Or change front each ſquadron by wheels of half ſquadron, or ſquadron, in the manner before directed.

The line will countermarch or change front, in the ſame manner as preſcribed for the regiment.

S. 54. *Diminishing or increasing the Front of the Column of March.*

Fig. 79. *The Column of march or manœuvre,* in conſequence of obſtructions in its route, which it cannot ſurround, is frequently obliged to diminiſh its front, and again to increaſe it when ſuch difficulties are paſſed: it is one of the moſt important of movements, and a regiment which does not perform this operation with the greateſt exactneſs and attention, ſo as not to lengthen out in the ſmalleſt degree, is not fit to move in the column of a conſiderable corps.

The diminution or increaſe of the front of the column, is performed by the ſquadron when in movement, or when halted. In movement this operation is either done by each diviſion ſucceſſively, when it arrives at the point where the leading one of the column performed it; or elſe by the whole diviſions of the ſquadron at the ſame moment. In either caſe the chief of the ſquadron, at the inſtant that it ſhould begin to reduce or increaſe its front, gives the general CAUTION ſo to do, and the leaders of diviſions give their words of execution to the ſub-diviſions to double behind, or move up briſkly to the regulating ones, which preſerve their original diſtances from each other, and never alter the pace at which the column was marching, but proceed as if they were totally unconnected with the operation that the others are performing.

When

When the column of diviſions is to be reduced to that of ſub-diviſions, it will always be done by the others doubling from their pivot flank, behind their reverſe flank ſub-diviſion, ſo that the ſquadron or regiment may remain ready to form in line, by a ſimple wheel up to the flank; therefore the doubling will be behind the right, when the right is in front, or behind the left, when the left is in front. When the front of the column is to be increaſed, the ſub-diviſions that doubled will move up to their leading one by a ſharp incline. As in diminiſhing or increaſing the front of the column in march, the pivot diviſion is the one that quits its direction; the exactneſs of pivots after ſuch operation, will appear to be interrupted; but this is of no conſequence, and inſtantly regained in a column of march; it can hardly ever take place in a column of manœuvre, which has entered a line on which it is to form.

Squadron.

1. *When a ſquadron in march, and in column of diviſions, diminiſhes its front, either by diviſions ſucceſſively, or the whole diviſions at once.* When the leading diviſion (ſuppoſe the right in front) arrives within twelve or fifteen yards of the point where it is neceſſary to diminiſh its front—The ſquadron leader will give a loud CAUTION that the doubling is to be made either ſucceſſively, or by the whole ſquadron at once.

CAUTION.

Left ſub-diviſion, Halt!

Right incline, March!

Left forward!

If ſucceſſively. On the general CAUTION given the leader of the head diviſion orders, *Left ſub-diviſion* (or whatever is the half of the marching body) *Halt!*; this it does, until the right one, which continues its march ſteadily at the then pace, has juſt cleared its flank—he then orders, *Right incline, March!* which it does ſharply and well forward; and when he perceives that it has doubled properly behind the right one, he gives the word, *Left forward!* at which it takes the rate of march, and its due diſtance, and pivot leaders are on that flank. Great vivacity is required in command and execution, not to impede the ſucceeding diviſions, and improperly lengthen out the column.

Fig. 32. A.

Each other leader performs exactly the ſame operation when his diviſion arrives on the ſpot where his preceding one doubled. Whatever is the front of the column, it is thus diminiſhed one half (without extending it in length) till it comes to ſub-diviſions; and if a farther diminution becomes neceſſary, the ſub-

diviſions

diviſions muſt break into ranks by two's, and the ranks by two's into file.

If all at the ſame time. On the general caution from the ſquadron commander, each diviſion leader without waiting for each other, proceeds as above. Fig. 32.

---

2. *When the ſquadron column of ſub-diviſions in march* (ſuppoſe the right in front) *increaſes its front to diviſions.*——The ſquadron commander gives a loud CAUTION, that column of diviſions is to be formed either ſucceſſively, or by the whole ſquadron at once.

CAUTION!

Left incline, March!

Forward!

Eyes left!

If ſucceſſively.—On the general CAUTION to form diviſions—The leader of the head diviſion orders his ſecond ſub-diviſion, *Left incline, March!* on which it briſkly obliques to the left, and when its right is open, it receives the word *Forward!* which brings it up by its right to the firſt ſub-diviſion (which has continued to march with the utmoſt ſteadineſs at its former rate) to which it joins itſelf; the leader takes poſt on the pivot flank of his diviſion, and orders, *Eyes left!* to where he Fig. 32. B.

is

is himſelf poſted: Each other leader performs exactly the ſame operation, when his leading ſub-diviſion arrives on the ſpot where the preceding one doubled up.

If all at the ſame time. On the general CAUTION from the ſquadron commander, each diviſion leader, without waiting for each other, proceeds as above.

When diviſions double back, or form up in column, ranks may be well cloſed, and the tranſition from one ſituation to another, made as briſkly as poſſible, and as ſoon as the column is in its new order, the pivot leaders place themſelves on thoſe pivots.

When the front of a column is to be diminiſhed, and the obſtacle is before the part which is not to double, ſuch part muſt incline after the doubling is made, in order to paſs it; but timely attention is to be given to bring up if poſſible, by inclining the part which is not to double, ſquare to the opening through which it is to paſs, before ſuch doubling begins.——And when a diminution of front is immediately to follow an alteration in the direction of the march, ſuch alteration ſhould be made with a gradual ſweep, ſo as to give the head of the column its new perpendicular direction, when it is at leaſt twelve or fifteen paces from the point of breaking off.

The

The ſucceſſive breakings of each diviſion of the column at the point of difficulty, and its ſubſequent moving up again as ſoon as it has paſſed it, is the moſt general practice, but is the moſt likely to lengthen it out, which is the great evil to be avoided. —The reduction of front by the whole ſquadron at once, is therefore the moſt eligible; and for the ſame reaſon the increaſe of front (when the rear of it has cleared the difficuty) by the whole ſquadron, is to be preferred.

The ſquadrons of a regiment or line in column, will, as they come up ſucceſſively to the point where the leading one made any change, perform the ſame operation.

When the column has to paſs a ſhort defile, and that Fig. 39. there is a certainty of immediately after reſuming the front which it has diminiſhed; then ſuch part of the reverſe flank of the leading diviſion, as the defilé will receive, will paſs it in front, and ſuch part of the pivot flank as is neceſſarily ſtopt, will by command, *Wheel by threes inwards,* and follow cloſe.—On quitting the defilé, the doubled part will form up briſkly, but the general rate of the column will at no time be altered, and in this manner diviſion ſucceeds diviſion without any improper extenſion taking place.—But if the column muſt continue any time on a reduced front, and may expect farther alteration, then it ſhould be diminiſhed by the doubling back of diviſions.

When

Fig. 32. *When a close column*, or one at a quarter distance, is to pass a defilé; before it enters it must stand on such a front as will require no farther reduction; and therefore on approaching the defilé a halt, if necessary, must be made, and such operation performed as will enable it to enter on such a front as it can maintain in passing. When the defilé is passed, a new arrangement will determine the advance of the column.

From column of files.—The men may at once move up to ranks by two's; or ranks by three's; or subdivisions, divisions, half divisions, or squadrons.

From column of ranks by two's.—The men may file; or they may at once move up to subdivisions, divisions, &c. but in order to march by ranks by three's, the two's must first wheel up, and then break into three's, and close up.

From column of ranks by three's.—The ranks may at once file off so as to march two in front, or the rear rank three's may successively double behind their respective front leaders, and march (as divisions of three's) three in front.—But in order to march four in front, the ranks by three's must first wheel up and then wheel ranks by two's, but without any formal closing in of the squadron or retarding the column.—Divisions of any kind may at once be formed up to.

Column of subdivisions, divisions, &c. enlarge or reduce their front on the march.

CLOSE

CLOSE COLUMN.

The general object of a conſiderable cloſe column is, to form the line to the front in the quickeſt manner poſſible: to conceal numbers from the knowledge of the adverſary; and to extend in whatever direction the circumſtance of the moment may require, which, till it is nearly accompliſhed, cannot be obvious to an oppoſite enemy.—It is a ſituation for the aſſembly, more than for the movement of troops.—It is not formed, until the head of the troops is arrived in column of, whole, half, or quarter diſtance, near the ground where they are to extend into line.—The formation from cloſe column into line is an original one; often protected by cannon; made at ſuch a diſtance as not to fear interruption from an enemy; and avoiding the enfilade of artillery.—Its poſitions cannot fail to be truly taken.

The cloſe column may generally be compoſed of half ſquadrons for the purpoſes of movement. But when halted and to deploy, it may then double its front, and ſtand in ſquadrons.

In the cloſe column, when ready to deploy into line, there is a diſtance of two horſes length between regiment and regiment,—of one horſe's length between ſquadrons of the regiment,—of half a horſe's length between

between the diviſions and ranks of ſquadrons.——Officers and their coverers are on the pivot flanks of their diviſions---colours and ſupernumeraries are on the flanks, not the pivot ones; and muſic, farriers, or certain ſupernumeraries may alſo be in the rear of the regiment,---no ſingle perſons are between the ranks.

When the cloſe column is formed and halted, the commanding officer (alone) gives orders for its MARCH, HALT, and commencement of formation in line.

A cloſe column muſt looſen its diviſions before it can well march in front, and its changes of direction muſt be made circling, and on a moving flank, to enable its rear gradually to comply. If too great intervals ſhould be made in the column, they can beſt be cloſed by a halt of the head.

The cloſe column is formed from line, or from the column of march.

———

When the regiment from line forms cloſe column, it is neceſſary to diſengage the heads of its diviſions from one another, that they may the ſooner and eaſier arrive at their poſition; this they do, *by wheeling to the hand ordered an eighth wheel* (of the quarter circle)---they then wheel ranks by three's to their leading flank---march to their place in column, and each wheels up by three's, which again forms the diviſion.

S. 55. *The Close Column may be formed from Line in front or rear of either of the Flank Half Squadrons, or in front and rear of any central one.* Fig. 33.

If the Column is to stand faced as the Line is.

1. If in front of a flank division—The eighth wheel is outwards or from that division, and three's break to their front leading flank.

2. If in rear of a flank division—The eighth wheel is inwards or towards that division; and the threes break to their rear or leading hand.

3. If in front and rear of a central division—The eighth wheel is towards the hand which is to be the head of the column, viz. to the right, if the right is to be in front; and to the left, if the left is to be in front; and the three's break to their conducting hand.

If the Column is to stand faced to the Rear.

1. If in front of a flank division—That division is countermarched,—the eighth wheel is made outwards Fig. 34.

wards or from that diviſion, and three's break to what was the ſtanding flank, or their rear hand.

Fig. 35. 2. If in rear of a flank diviſion.—That diviſion is countermarched—the eighth wheel is inwards or to that diviſion, and three's break to the flank that wheeled up, or their front hand.

3. If in front and rear of a central diviſion.—That diviſion is countermarched—the eighth wheel is toward the flank which is to be the head of the column, and the diviſions break by three's to their conducting hand.

On this occaſion, advantage will ariſe if the *eighth wheel* is made on the center of each body which does ſo wheel; as it will more effectually diſengage the leading flanks.

S. 56. *When the Regiment from Line forms Close Column.*

1. *Before or behind either of the Flank Half Squadrons.*

CAUTION. A CAUTION will expreſs the half ſquadrons, and whether the formation

tion is in front or rear of it: and a new poſition may be given to it, and its leader ſhifts, if it is neceſſary, to that flank which is to become the pivot one of the column, and another perſon places himſelf 10 or 12 yards before or behind him, according to circumſtances, to mark the perpendicular and pivot line of the column.

HALF SQUADRONS TO THE —— WHEEL! MARCH! HALT! DRESS! — The half ſquadrons of the regiment will eight wheel (of the quarter circle) to the hand ordered.

THREE'S —— WHEEL! MARCH! *Halt! Dreſs!* — The half ſquadrons will WHEEL by three's, to which ever hand conducts them to their place in the cloſe column, and leaders will ſhift accordingly.

MARCH! — The whole will MARCH to the front or rear of the named half ſquadron, and each leader will proceed in the ſame manner as in forming

forming open column from line (except that pivot markers are not ſent out) ſtopping in his own perſon at his pivot point, and giving his words to *halt*, *wheel up*, and *dreſs*, to his half ſquadron, when it has arrived upon the proper ground on which it is to ſtand in cloſe column.

Halt!
Three's Wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

During the formation of the cloſe column, as ſoon as the regiment is put in motion, the commanding officer will immediately place himſelf before the officer of the directing half ſquadron, and ſee that the pivot leaders cover each other in the perpendicular direction, whether ſuch covering is taken from before or behind.

---

2. *On*

2. *On a Central Half Squadron.* Fig. 33.

CAUTION. — A CAUTION of formation is given. — The named half ſquadron will ſtand faſt, or be otherwiſe placed; its leader will place himſelf on its future pivot flank, and the line of pivots will be aſcertained by a detached perſon.

RIGHT, EIGHT WHEEL! &c. &c.
THREE'S —— WHEEL! &c. &c. — The half ſquadrons of the regiment will wheel towards the hand which is to be in front of the column, and leaders will ſhift accordingly.

MARCH!
Halt!
Three's Wheel up, &c. &c. — At the word MARCH! the reſt of the formation will proceed as before directed, part of the regiment arranging itſelf before and part behind the given half ſquadron, and the officers covering on the proper pivot flank.

In forming close column facing to the rear, the same operations take place as to the front, with this difference, that the named half squadron countermarches: the other half squadrons of the regiment wheel as directed, and lead from such flanks as establish a countermarch of the whole.

Fig. 34, 35.

In the same manner in which close columns are here formed from line, may *columns at half or quarter distance* also generally be formed, observing that in such cases pivot flank points are given by markers, as in the formation in open column.

If the close column of squadrons is formed from line, the intervals between them prevent the necessity of their making the eight wheel:—they will, therefore, at once break by three's to their leading flank, and march to their places in column, as before directed.

The close column is formed from column of march—By *halting* the head division, and ORDERING the others to close up and *halt* successively. If the column of march is composed of divisions, it may be ordered to double up to column of half squadrons, and again to close; the column of half squadrons may also double to column of squadrons, and again close ready to deploy into line. These doublings are made by the flank

flank march by taree's of each rear diviſion, or rear half ſquadron, or by the oblique march, if diſtances allow it.——Or,—if the head diviſion continues its march, the rear ones will be ordered to cloſe at a quicker pace, and *each* ſucceſſively to reſume the rate of marching when they have ſo done.—The cloſing from open column to that at half or quarter diſtance is done in the ſame manner.

The cloſe column marches to its flank.—To deploy into line; to correct intervals; to gain an enemy's flank; or for ſome other particular purpoſe. But a conſiderable movement to front or rear may require a ſtill greater looſening of its diviſions and ranks.

S. 57. *When the Column marches to a Flank.*

CAUTION! A CAUTION will expreſs to which flank. If to that which is not the pivot, the leading officer and coverer of each is ORDERED to move quickly by the rear of their diviſions to that flank; and the ſerrefiles and

and colours who were on that flank exchange to the other.

THREE'S TO THE WHEEL!
MARCH!

Halt! Dreſs!

MARCH!

The whole will WHEEL by three's to the flank and be put in MARCH, the officer that leads the front diviſion taking care to move in the exact alignement which is prolonged for him, and all the others, in preſerving their proper ſituations, dreſs and move by him.

HALT!
THREE'S WHEEL UP!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

When the column HALTS, and WHEELS UP by three's, the pivot leaders, &c. &c. are ORDERED to ſhift to their proper places (if not already at them) by the rear of their diviſions, unleſs the intended and immediate formation of the line requires their remaining where they are.

S. 58. *When the Column marches to the Front.*

MARCH! — The whole advance at the word MARCH!---If it is intended to looſen the column, a CAUTION ſo to do will be given, the whole will HALT, except the leading diviſion, and each diviſion will again ſucceſſively *march* at a horſe's diſtance.

CAUTION!
HALT!
March!
March!

HALT! — When the general word HALT is given, the column halts as it is then placed; but if a partial and low word *Halt* is given to the leading diviſion only, the others ſtill move on, and halt ſucceſſively in cloſe column, by word from their leaders.

Halt!
Halt!

S. 59. *When the Column is to change Direction.*

If halted.

CAUTION! — A CAUTION will be given that it is to change direction either to the right

or left.---The front diviſion of the column is *wheeled* up into the new direction, and an advanced perſon is placed to determine the future line of pivots.

THREE'S LEFT WHEEL! &c. &c. MARCH!

Halt! Three's wheel up! March! Halt! Dreſs!

The other diviſions will WHEEL by three's to the ordered flank; MARCH! *Halt! Wheel up!* and cover in column. If this movement is made by the reverſe flank, no ſhifting of leaders, &c. will be required, but one of the ſerrefile officers already there will conduct the flank movement of each, the words of command being ſtill given by the proper pivot leader to *halt* and *wheel up.*

If in March.

If gradual and inconſiderable changes of direction are to be made during the march of the column, the *head* will on a moveable pivot, effect ſuch change, while all the other diviſions, by advancing a ſhoulder, and inclining up to the flank which is the wheeling one, will ſucceſſively conform to each other and to the leading

leading diviſion, ſo that at the word *forward*, they may move on in the ſtraight line.

S. 60. *When the Column is to make Front to its Rear, by the Countermarch of its Divisions.* Fig. 36.

THE COLUMN WILL COUNTERMARCH!

EVEN DIVISIONS, RIGHT FILE!

MARCH!
Front!

If the diviſions are at a ſufficient diſtance to allow of it, they will, each ſeparately, on its own ground, countermarch, as directed for the open column. (S. 45.)—If the column is quite cloſe, the whole will prepare to *file*, from the reverſe flank. The even or every other diviſion (reckoning from the head) will *file* to the flank, and form, ſo that their pivot flank may be three or four paces clear of the column.

THE WHOLE WILL COUNTERMARCH!

They are then ordered to COUNTERMARCH towards the column, and at the ſame word, the odd diviſions which have hitherto ſtood ſtill, countermarch alſo each on its own ground;

MARCH! *Halt! Front! Dreſs!*	ground; the even diviſions *file* on till they are again in their proper places in column, and *Halt, Front.*

DEPLOYMENT INTO LINE.

The cloſe column of the regiment forms in line, on its front, on its rear, or on any central diviſion, by the DEPLOYMENT or flank march by three's, and by which it ſucceſſively uncovers and extends its ſeveral diviſions.

Before the cloſe column deploys, its head diviſion, whether it is halted or in movement, muſt be on the line into which it is to extend.—That line is therefore the prolongation of the head diviſion, and ſuch points in it, to one or both flanks as are neceſſary for the formation of the regiment, are immediately taken.

The flank march muſt be made quick, parallel to the general line, and without opening out, the moſt particular preciſion is therefore required.——Each diviſion, when oppoſite to its ground in line, will be moſt advantageouſly halted and wheeled up (or at leaſt corrected) by a detached field officer of the regiment, in caſe its leader ſhould not be critical in his commands; or, that he ſhould not be heard; or, that his

three's

these's are too open; and thus may the defects of a preceding diviſion be remedied by the judicious ſtop of the one following it.---The diviſion is then brought up into line by its reſpective leader.---The juſtneſs of formations depend all together on officers judging their diſtances and timing their commands.---The officer, in leading his diviſion into line, muſt bring it up perfectly ſquare.---His dreſſing is always from the laſt come up diviſion towards the other flank, and the eyes of all are turned to that diviſion, and the formed part of the line.

As the head of the cloſe column is always brought up to the line on which it is to extend, therefore, when the formation is made on the rear, or on a central diviſion, ſuch diviſion, when uncovered, muſt move up to the identical ground which the front has quitted.

In the paſſing of an obſtacle, parts of the regiment are frequently required to form in cloſe column, and again deploy into line, although the diviſion formed up to, continues to be moveable. Fig. 73.

Before any column deploys.—The diviſions of it are properly cloſed up, and ſquare, and ferrefiles, &c. are on the flanks, not the leading ones, that the movement may not be embarraſſed.

S. 61.

Fig. 37. S. 61. *When the Regiment in close Column of Half Squadron* (suppose the Right in Front) *deploys into Line.*

1. *On the Front Division.*

The column being halted with its front diviſion in the alignement, and all the others in their true ſituations, parallel and well cloſed up to it, a point of forming and dreſſing upon is taken in the prolongation of that diviſion (before the flanks of which two markers are placed) and towards where the left of the regiment is to extend (D).—A

CAUTION! CAUTION is given that the line will form on the front diviſion.

THREES LEFT WHEEL! MARCH! *Halt! Dreſs!* At the words—THREE'S LEFT WHEEL! MARCH! *Halt! Dreſs!* the front diviſion ſtands faſt, its leader ſhifting to the right, and all the others wheel (in this caſe always to the pivot flank.)

MARCH! At the word MARCH, they go off quick, with heads dreſſed, moving parallel (not oblique) to the line of formation; the threes cloſe and compact ſo as not to open the diviſions out.

Halt! Wheel up! March! Halt! Dreſs! March! The leader of the ſecond or leading diviſion, having moved out to his right at the above word, March, allows his diviſion, led by his coverer, to go on a ſpace equal to its front (ferrefiles excluſive) and then gives his words, *Halt! Wheel up! March! Halt! Dreſs!* and corrects and ſquares his diviſion. He then being on its right, gives his word *March!* and the diviſion proceeds towards its place in the alignement. The leader, when within ten or twelve yards, moves nimbly forward, and places himſelf before the left flank of the preceding diviſion, and is thus ready to give the word, *Halt! Dreſs!* at the inſtant his inward flank man (to whom the ſtandard has by this time moved up) joins that diviſion. He then expeditiouſly corrects his

his men (who have dreſſed upon the formed part of the line) on the diſtant given point, and reſumes his proper poſt in ſquadron.

Halt!
Three's Wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

In this manner every other diviſion proceeds, each being ſucceſſively (by its officer who himſelf ſtops on the left flank of the diviſion which precedes him) fronted, marched up, halted, and dreſſed in line.

The diviſions, which give the intervals of ſquadrons, muſt take care to front oppoſite their ground in line, and ſend up a marker to give the interval flank. The ſtandard will come up in its place with the right half of each ſquadron. The ferrefiles will halt when their diviſions front; and when the movement of the other diviſions allow of it, they will place themſelves behind their own proper ones.

Fig. 38.

2. *On the Rear Diviſion.*

The column being placed as before directed, and a point of forming (D) taken to the right in the prolongation

longation of the head diviſion, and towards where the right of the regiment is to come.

CAUTION! — A CAUTION is given, that the line will be formed on the rear diviſion. The leaders of diviſions, and their coverers (except thoſe of the rear diviſion) will immediately be ORDERED to paſs behind their ſeveral diviſions, and poſt themſelves on the right of each, exchanging places with their ſerrefiles. Two under officers are ſent from the rear diviſion, to place themſelves correctly before the flank files of the front diviſion, and the leader of the front diviſion is ſhewn the point (D) in the alignement on which he is to march, taking his intermediate points if neceſſary.

THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL! MARCH! *Halt! Dreſs!* — The words, THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL! — MARCH! — *Halt! Dreſs!* are then given, and all the diviſions, except the rear one, wheel three's to the right (in this caſe always to the reverſe flank.)

At

MARCH! At the word MARCH! the wheeled diviſions move on quick; their heads are dreſſed to the left; the front one moves in the alignement, and the others parallel, and cloſe on its right.

March! As ſoon as the rear diviſion is uncovered, it receives the word, *March!* and proceeds. When within a few yards of its ground, its leader moves briſkly up to the marker of its left in the new poſition, and there in due time gives his words, *Halt! Dreſs!* quickly correcting his diviſion on the diſtant point of formation.

Halt! Dreſs!

Halt! Wheel up! March! Halt! Dreſs! In the mean time the leader of the diviſion which immediately precedes the rear one having at the firſt word, MARCH! gone briſkly round to the rear of his diviſion, without impeding its movement, and having allowed it to move on, led by his coverer, gives his words to *Halt! Front!* and *Dreſs*, when his diviſion has marched a diſtance equal to its front, and

thereby

thereby uncovered the one behind it (which, as already mentioned, immediately moves forward) he then places himſelf on its left.——As ſoon as his own front is clear, he gives his word *March!* his diviſion proceeds, and he himſelf in due time advances to the right of the preceding diviſion then on the line, and from thence gives his words *Halt! Dreſs!* when his own left joins ſuch right, he corrects his diviſion on the right, and reſumes his poſt in ſquadron. The markers of intervals, ſtandard, and ſerrefiles, proceed as already mentioned.

March!

Halt! Dreſs!

All the other diviſions ſucceſſively are conducted in the ſame manner, until the right one (which has been marching critically in the alignement, and on no account getting before it) receives, when it arrives on its juſt ground, the words, to *Halt.--Front*---and *Dreſs.*

Halt!
Wheel-up! &c.

Halt!
Wheel up!—March!
Halt! Dreſs!

3. *On a Central Division.*

Fig. 39. Forming points (D. D.) muſt be given to both flanks in the prolongation of the head diviſion.---At the CAUTION of forming on a central diviſion, the leading officers, and the ſerrefiles, will ſhift accordingly.---The diviſions in front of the named one wheel to one flank; thoſe in the rear of it to the other, according to the hand which leads to their ground.---The named diviſion, when uncovered, moves up into line to its marked flank; thoſe that were in front of it proceed as in forming on a rear diviſion; thoſe that are in rear of it, proceed as in forming on a front diviſion.

Fig. 40. 41. ### S. 62. *When the Column of Half Squadrons forms Column of Squadrons.*

CAUTION!

THREE'S LEFT WHEEL! &c.

A CAUTION is given that the rear half ſquadrons will form ſquadrons.——At the word THREE'S WHEEL! &c. the rear half ſquadrons wheel (always to the pivot flank) and their leaders paſs ſideways, ſo as to be clear of their rank.

At

MARCH!

At the word MARCH! the leaders ſtand faſt, the coverer of each conducts the diviſion, and the leader of each, when it has cleared the ſtanding diviſion, gives the word to *Halt! Wheel up! &c. &c.* when he arrives at the one he is to join.---The ſerrefiles, as ſoon as they have the opportunity, place themſelves in rank behind their ſquadrons, at half a horſe diſtance.

Halt!
Three's wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

CAUTION!

A CAUTION is given to cloſe diſtance to the front.---The ſquadrons move at the word MARCH! by the pivot flank, and each receives the word HALT! DRESS! when his ſquadron has cloſed.---The whole ſtand in cloſe column of ſquadrons, with a diſtance of half a horſe between ranks, of a horſe between ſquadrons, and of two horſes between regiments.

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

Fig. 37.

S. 63. *When the close Column of Squadrons is to deploy into Line.*

1. *On the Front Division.*

THE CAUTION of deployment is given, the line is prolonged, and attendant circumſtances prepared.--- The ſquadrons deploy, and arrive in line in the ſame manner, and by the ſame commands, as the half ſquadrons. The ſerrefiles in their places accompany the movements of their diviſions.

---

2. *On the Rear Division.*

Fig. 38. This deployment is alſo perfectly ſimilar to that by half ſquadrons.

---

3. *On a Central Division.*

Fig. 35. The double operation of forming in a front and rear diviſion, is the ſame as for the half ſquadrons.

The Column muſt be always well cloſed up before it deploys.——When it deploys on a front diviſion, the *three's* wheel to the pivot flank, which becomes the leading

leading one.——When it deploys on the rear diviſion, the three's wheel from the pivot flank, which then becomes the following one.

The cloſe column, when it forms line on a front, or rear diviſion, may either be halted, or in motion to its flank.---From this ſituation of the flank march, it is that every regiment is required to begin the deploy, when forming in line with others, and therefore muſt be much practiſed by the regiment when ſingle.—— When the formation into line is made on a central diviſion, it muſt always begin from the halt of the cloſe column.

The regiment ſhould alſo in exerciſe deploy on the front diviſion, when in march, as it is the method by which parts of the line reform after being broken by an obſtacle; and of lengthening out the flank of a line that may be in movement.

Although the quickeſt, moſt exact, and general method of deployment, requires that the regiment before deploying ſhould ſtand perpendicular to the line on which it is to form; yet it may ſometimes happen, that the immediate deployment of a column may be demanded on a *line oblique* to the one on which it then ſtands, and that circumſtances do not permit of the previous operation of placing it perpendicular to that line.

S. 64. *Oblique Deployments of the close Column into Line.*

1. *On an oblique Line advanced.*

The front diviſion is wheeled up into the new direction on its *reverſe* flank, and the line is prolonged to (D.) The diviſions of the column are wheeled to the hand it deploys to. The leaders of diviſions then turn their horſes ſo as themſelves to take a direction parallel to the given one. The whole are put in march, and the rear of the diviſions gradually get into the ſquare direction of their heads, which proceed and form as uſual. In this movement the heads of the diviſions will be a little retired behind each other, the rear leaders will take great care not to cloſe on each other, nor to the head which conducts them. Much preciſion is alſo required in juſtly timing the *Halt—wheel up*—of each diviſion, which by that time ought to be moving perfectly parallel to the line of formation.

---

2. *On an oblique Line retired.*

Fig. 42. A. The front diviſion is wheeled upon its *pivot* flank into the new direction, and the line is prolonged to (D.) The ſame operation, though more difficult, takes place as when the line is advanced, and the rear diviſions

diviſions muſt take particular care to eaſe from and yield to the march of the front. The head diviſion being advanced a few paces before it takes the oblique direction, will give a facility to the heads of the rear diviſions in gradually gaining it.

Such deployment can hardly be required on any other than the front diviſion of the cloſe column. Particular attention is neceſſary to give every aid as to the points of forming, and to the heads of diviſions moving as ſoon as poſſible parallel to and behind the line.

S. 65. When the close Column halted is to form in Line in the Prolongation of its Flank, and on a front, a rear, or a central Division. Fig. 43. A. B. C.

MARCH! — The caution of formation is given.—The named diviſion ſtands faſt, the others MARCH forward in cloſe column in the given line. Their pivot officers ſucceſſively take wheeling diſtance from each other, beginning at the named one, and ſucceſſively give their word *Halt!* as each has acquired it.—When the whole

Halt!
Halt!

Three's about Wheel! &c. MARCH! *Three's about Wheel!* &c.

is in open column, the line is formed by a wheel up to a flank. In this manner diſtances are begun to be taken from the rear.——But when the named diviſion is a front or central one, the others that are behind it muſt wheel three's ABOUT, MARCH forward, take their diſtances, and *Front* ſucceſſively.

The column may alſo be opened from any named diviſion, by the leading one only marching off, and each other ſucceſſively following, as wheeling diſtance is acquired from the one preceding.—When the whole have opened, the general word HALT is given, or the column is allowed to proceed.

S. 66. *When the Column closed to Half Diſtance, forms Line to its front on any Diviſion.*

The line will be formed—Either by the deployments of the cloſe column, or by the flank marches of the diviſions of the open column, and their wheel up into line; or by a ſharp incline of diviſions into line.—In every caſe care muſt be taken to have a ſufficiency

ſufficiency of points eſtabliſhed to enſure the true direction of the line.

From column at quarter diſtance the line may be formed to any front, and on any diviſion, by the movements of the cloſe and open column.

The firſt formation of the line from column of march, is often made by the deployments of the cloſe and half open column—but they ſeldom can be of uſe in changes of poſition of the line, when once formed: ſuch changes are made in open column, or by diagonal movements of parts of the line.

Changes of Position of the Regiment by the Echellon (or diagonal) Movement.

The Echellon poſition and movements are not only neceſſary and applicable to the immediate attacks and retreats of great bodies; but alſo to the previous *oblique* or direct changes of ſituation which a regiment or corps formed in line, may be obliged to make to its front

Echellon of march in changes of poſition.

front or rear; or on a particular fixed diviſion of the line.

How formed.

The oblique changes are produced by the wheel leſs than the quarter circle, of diviſions from line! which places them in the echellon ſituation, ready to move. —The *direct* changes are produced by the perpendicular and ſucceſſive march of diviſions from line, to front or rear.

Fig. 44.

The march in the direct echellon (B) produces new parallel poſitions to front or rear——The march in echellon (C) when formed by the wheels of the diviſions from line, produces new oblique poſitions to front or rear, and at the ſame time to the flank, according to the degree of wheel given to the echellon. The march in open column (A) produces new prolonged poſitions, to either flank.

How applied.

The echellon of march neceſſary in making changes of ſituation, will be compoſed of half ſquadrons or diviſions, and formed from line by the wheel of each forward on its own flank, to the hand to which it is to move, and ſuch wheel muſt be leſs than the quarter circle, for in ſuch caſe the body would be in open column.---To form the echellon of oblique march, the degree of wheel made up from line ought ſtrictly to be ſuch as will place the diviſions perpendicular to their future points of march: but in practice generally, the *half, quarter, or eighth wheel* (of the quarter circle) each ordered according to circumſtances, may ſuffice to attain the propoſed end

Degree of wheel into Echellon.

The

The echellon may be conſidered as a column of a particular kind, as well as the open column; they are eaſily converted into each other, by a new degree of wheel of each of their component diviſions. Echellon Column.

S. 67. *When a Regiment from Line wheels forward by Half Squadrons or Diviſions, to either Flank into oblique Echellon, and halts.* Fig. 46. A. Fig. 45. A.

CAUTION ! DIVISIONS WILL MAKE AN EIGHTH WHEEL TO THE RIGHT !

At the general CAUTION; that the diviſions will wheel forward, as much as to place them perpendicular to their future lines of march; a perſon from the leading diviſion of each ſquadron marks the wheeling flank of that diviſion, according to the degree ordered, whether *half*, *quarter*, or *eighth* wheel.

MARCH !

HALT ! DRESS !

At the word MARCH! each diviſion wheels up, and they receive the word HALT ! DRESS ! to the ſtanding flank, to which the

the leaders of diviſions (as neceſſary) have ſhifted.

In this ſituation the flanks wheeled to remain in an exact line, (and alſo the wheeling flanks, if the diviſions are of equal ſtrength) but in proportion to the degree of wheel which has been made, will the perpendicular raiſed from the ſtanding flank of each diviſion cut within the diviſion preceding it, till by the complete wheel of the quarter circle, all ſuch perpendiculars coincide in one: and the diſtance from diviſion to diviſion is equal to the front of each preceding diviſion, which was wheeled forward, and which by wheeling back would exactly again fill up that ſpace.—Whenever, therefore, the directing flanks of an echellon are all in the ſame line, and each diſtant from its preceding one a ſpace equal to the front of the preceding one, ſuch echellon is in a ſituation, by wheeling back, to form in line to the flank, as in (S. 69.); or to take a poſition forward, as in (S. 70, 71.)

When the movement is to be to the rear inſtead of the front—the regiment will wheel about by three's; wheel forward into echellons, in the above manner; and proceed as if the line was to its proper front.

S. 68. *When the Regiment in oblique Echellon, marches forward and halts; ready to form in such Direction as shall be required.* Fig. 45. A. Fig. 46. A.

The diviſions ſtanding thus parallel to each other, and their leaders being on the echellon flank (the one wheeled to)

MARCH! —At the word MARCH! the whole move on at an equal pace, each flank on its *own* perpendicular line: Each leader is now attentive to preſerve the diſtance he marched off at from his preceding flank; and alſo his oblique covering in the line of pivots, which remain always parallel to the original line: this requires the greateſt care, being an operation more difficult than moving in open column, where all the pivots cover each other in the line of movement.—Theſe circumſtances obſerved, the

HALT! echellon may at any inſtant be ordered to HALT! and will then be in a ſituation to form up parallel or oblique to the line it quitted.

The Echellon can at no time march in any other direction, than in the one to which it ſtands perpendicular: except that an INCLINE of the whole diviſions ſhould be required from it.—During the march, the

the ſame great regulating circumſtances that direct the open column, direct the echellon, viz. the preſervation of diſtance from the preceding leading flank, and the diagonal lining or covering of all thoſe flanks, at the ſame time that the perpendiculars of march are preſerved by each diviſion. Could the march in echellon be always executed with perfect accuracy, each flank leader covering a certain file of his preceding diviſion at a certain diſtance would enſure exactneſs, but this alone is not to be truſted to, and is rather to be conſidered as an aid than as a rule.—If the leaders of the two head diviſions do preſerve an equal and ſteady pace, under the direction of the commanding officer, who keeps cloſe on the flank of the firſt one, and gives ſuch directions to the ſecond as are neceſſary for preſerving the paralleliſm of the march; thoſe two will ſerve as a *baſe line* on which all the others ſhould cover.—In this, as in every other caſe, the perfect perpendicular march of the firſt leader, in conſequence of his own true perſonal poſition, and his attention ſolely given to this ſubject, and the equality of pace, is what will much determine the preciſion and juſtneſs of the whole.

The commanding officer of the regiment is with the leading echellon in march, and on coming into line; and the adjutant, or ſome appointed perſon, always marks the prolonged point towards the other flank, on which the diviſions are ſucceſſively corrected as they halt in the line.

S. 69. When the Regiment having wheeled from Line into oblique Echellon, has marched and halted, and is to form back into Line, parallel to the one it quitted. Fig. 45. B. Fig. 46. B.

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE!

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

A CAUTION is given that the diviſions wheel back into line.---At the word MARCH! each reins back on its ſtanding flank, and the word HALT! DRESS! is given when each ſquadron is nearly formed; the leaders of pivots and others having ſhifted ſo as to find themſelves in their ſquadron places at the completion of the wheels.—If the ground does not admit of reining back, then the diviſions WHEEL ABOUT by three's--WHEEL FORWARD:—again WHEEL ABOUT,—HALT, DRESS in line.

Fig. 47.

S. 70. *When the Regiment in oblique Echellon has marched and halted, and is to form up, oblique to the Line it quitted.*

Fig. 47. B.
Fig. 45. C.

1. *If the formation is made forward*; and that the leading diviſion wheels up the ſame portion of the quarter circle that it before wheeled from line into echellon: then the others without altering their ſituation, move on, and ſucceſſively arrive in line, and dreſs up with it. In this manner does one or more regiments make their change of poſition on a flank or central diviſion of the line.

2. *If its wheel up exceeds that portion:* the others wheel up one half of that exceſs, move on, and ſucceſſively dreſs up with it.

3. *If its wheel up is leſs than that portion:* the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, after deducting one half of what the leading diviſion has now wheeled forward; they then move on, and dreſs up with it.

4. *If the formation is to be in the prolongation* of the front diviſion as it ſtands: the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, then move on, and dreſs up with it.

5. *If the leading diviſion has to wheel back* into the new poſition: the others wheel back (in addition to the

the one half of what they originally wheeled forward) half of what the leading diviſion has now wheeled, move on, and dreſs up with it.

All theſe ſpecified wheelings are in order to make the diviſions ſtand perpendicular to the lines on which they muſt march to their points of formation; which lines change in conſequence of the poſition given by the leading diviſion.

S. 71. When a Regiment or Line is to change its Position on a fixed Flank, by throwing the other Flank forward or backward, and by the Echellon March of Divisions.

1. *When a Flank is thrown forward.* Fig. 47. B. Fig. 46. B.

The new direction is aſcertained by two perſons placed beyond the flank, and the flank diviſion is accurately wheeled into it.

Diviſions. Wheel, &c. March!	The other ſimilar diviſions of the line are (each upon its inward flank) wheeled up *half* as much

HALT! DRESS! — as the flank diviſion wheeled, and thus ſtand in echellon, the pivot leaders placing themſelves on the inward flank.

MARCH! — The whole, except the flank diviſion, are then put in MARCH, each looking to its leader, who is on its inward flank, and thus advancing perpendicularly towards its point in the new line.

Before the leading diviſion of each ſquadron has reached the line, a marker will move forward quickly to prolong it, and place himſelf rather beyond where his rear diviſion is to come up; ſo that there ſhall be always at leaſt *one* fixed object to correct upon, beyond each diviſion, as it halts in line.

—Shoulder Forward! — When the officer, conducting the ſecond diviſion, arrives within 20 or 25 paces of where he is to join the firſt diviſion already placed, he gives a word, *Shoulder* (the outward one) *forward!* on which the man next to himſelf gradually turns his horſe ſo as to arrive in the new line per-

perfectly ſquare in his own perſon; and the reſt of his diviſion (who till this inſtant have marched in their original perpendicular direction) conforming to him, and proportionally quickening their pace, arrive in full parallel front on the line; ſo as to have a very ſmall movement to make at the word *Halt! Dreſs up!* which is given when his leading flank touches the flank of his preceding diviſion; he inſtantly corrects the dreſſing of his diviſion, and changes to his poſt in ſquadron.

Halt! Dreſs up!

In this manner diviſion will come up after diviſion, each following one obſerving to give the word—*Shoulder forward!* when the preceding one gets the word *Halt! Dreſs up!* and each, after correcting his diviſion, reſuming his poſt in ſquadron.

—Shoulder forward!

Halt! Dreſs up!

The exact formation of this oblique line, depends totally on the diviſions having wheeled (only) one half of the angle which the new poſition makes with

the old one; for ſhould they at firſt wheel up the whole of that angle, they would then be marching parallel to that line, and arrive in it doubled behind each other; whereas, by having the other half of the wheel to complete when they come near to the new poſition, each moves in a perpendicular direction, and diſengages the ground required by the ſucceeding one to form upon.

Fig. 47. B.

2. *When a Flank is thrown backward.*

The direction is aſcertained as before, and the flank diviſion *placed* on it.

THREE'S ABOUT WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The ſquadrons of the line go *about* ranks by three's.

DIVISIONS RIGHT QUARTER WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The diviſions of ſquadrons make their *ordered degree* of wheel towards the placed diviſion.

MARCH!

The diviſions MARCH with their rear ranks in front, and form in line in the ſame manner as when changing poſition forward; except that the leader of each,

—*Shoulder forward!*

each, when he arrives within 20 or 25 paces of the line, will give his word — *Shoulder forward!* and thereby gradually bring up his diviſion to be parallel to the line; he himſelf having ſtopt at the line, will, as ſoon as his flank front rank man comes to the preceding formed rear rank man, give his words to *Halt! Wheel about! March! Halt! Dreſs! March! Halt! Dreſs!* in the general line on the point which is prepared for him beyond the flank of his own ſquadron.

Halt!
Three's about wheel!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

Very great activity is required from the leader in dreſſing up, or dreſſing back of his diviſion, otherwiſe the point of appui (viz. his own fartheſt flank) will not be ready for the next leader, who is to arrive at and begin from it to perform the ſame operation, and this will particularly happen where the change of direction is inconſiderable.——In the ſucceſſive dreſſing up or back of diviſions, officers are to be careful always to line them ſo as not to obſcure the

marking perſons, but to leave them open and diſtinct, ſo that the direction of the line may run horſe's head to horſe's head of the markers.

Fig. 48.

3. *When the Change is on a Central Diviſion, one Flank being thrown forward and the other backward.*

The direction of the new line is aſcertained, and the central diviſion placed on it.

—THREE'S ABOUT WHEEL!
March!
Halt! Dreſs!

} The ſquadron of the retiring wing go ABOUT by three's.

DIVISIONS TO THE RIGHT,
EIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

} The diviſions of the ſquadrons of each wing make the *ordered degree* of wheel inwards and forwards, ſo as to face to the placed diviſion.

MARCH!

} The whole MARCH forward into line with the central diviſion, the advancing wing dreſſing up, and the retiring wing again fronting and dreſſing in

in line, as already deſcribed in this ſection.

HALT!
DIVISIONS WHEEL BACK!
HALT! DRESS!

1. *During the oblique march of diviſions to the front*, if they ſhould ſuddenly be obliged to form line parallel to the one they quitted: the whole will HALT; the inward (or directing) flank of each ſtands faſt, and each diviſion WHEELS back to the line of its ſucceeding one. —— When the march is reſumed, each diviſion WHEELS up its outward flank to its former poſition, and then the whole proceed.

TO THE RIGHT EIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!
MARCH!

HALT!
THREE'S ABOUT! MARCH!

2. *During the march to the rear*, if this operation is neceſſary. —The whole HALT, and come ABOUT, by three's

HALT! DRESS!
WHEEL UP INTO LINE!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS.

THREE'S ABOUT! &c.
TO THE RIGHT, EIGHT WHEEL! &c.

three's. Each diviſion WHEELS up its outward flank to the pivot preceding, and the line is thus formed.——When the march is to be reſumed, the whole wheel ABOUT: each diviſion WHEELS forward the ordered degree, as at firſt, and the whole proceed.

3. *If the change of poſition is a central one*, then both operations may take place at the ſame time; or one wing only may be required to halt, and form, while the other continues to purſue its proper formation in the new line.

The ſquareneſs of each diviſion, and the perfect equality of pace during the movement, are what alone can produce the decided exactneſs which ſuch operarations indiſpenſably require in their execution, and without which they muſt neceſſarily fail.

S. 72. *When the Regiment by the Echellon March changes Position to Front or Rear (and at the same Time towards a Flank) on a distant Point, which is in the Intersection of the old and new Line.* Fig. 47. 45.

1. *If the change is to the front.*—Each diviſion is wheeled up to the leading hand, half the degree (and no more) that would be required to place it parallel to the new poſition.—The whole move on in their perpendicular direction, till the flank of the leading diviſion arrives at the new line; it then immediately wheels up the ſame degree that it before wheeled, and halts, dreſſed in the new direction.—The other diviſions move on, and as they ſucceſſively arrive near the new line, they advance their outward ſhoulders, and halt, dreſs in it.

2. *If the change is made to the rear.*—The whole go ABOUT by three's, wheel into Echellon as above, and march on.—Each diviſion again wheels ABOUT, and halts, dreſſes, when it has arrived in the new line.

This is the movement to be performed by each of the regiments of a conſiderable line (except one flank, or one central one) in moſt changes of poſition made on a point within the line.—For there can be but one regiment

regiment of a line which forms on a fixed diviſion all the others are evidently moveable forward or backward, each in proportion to its diſtance from the general center, and from the point where its leading flank is to reſt on the new line.

S. 73. *When from Line, the half Squadrons of a Regiment march off in Echellon ſucceſſively and directly forward to the Front, and again form in Line, either to the Front or to the Flank.*

Fig. 49. A. 1. *As long as the intention is to form again to that front.*—They may be retired at any *named* diſtance behind each other, and when the leading diviſion *halts*, the others may move on, and dreſs in line with it.

Fig. 48. B. 2. *But when the intention is to form in line to the flank.*—The whole will be ordered to HALT, or the diviſions to take any named diſtance, and *halt.*---The directing flank of the leading diviſion will be conſidered as the firſt point in the intended oblique line, and the particular direction meant to be given it, will be eſtabliſhed by the placing of another point (a) beyond and before it——A marker from each diviſion will quickly move out, and place themſelves as pivots, lining on the firſt given points, and on each other;

each

each alſo taking a diſtance from the one before him, equal to the front of the diviſion which precedes him.

The rear diviſions are then, by inclining to their directing hands, or by flank marching, moving up, and ſhoulders forward, MARCHED to their reſpective markers, and halted on the line.---Or the diviſions, inſtead of forming in line, may be ordered to HALT in Echellon at their ſeveral markers, and parallel to their former front. The whole is then put in march forward, and preſerving their relative ſituations, HALT, and WHEEL BACK into line, at ſome more advanced point.

D.D.

END OF PART FIRST.

PART

PART SECOND.

OF THE LINE.

THE movements and manœuvres of a conſiderable line, are ſimilar to, and derived from the ſame general principles as thoſe of a ſingle regiment; they will be compounded, varied, and applied according to circumſtances, ground, and the intentions of the commanding officer; but their modes of execution remain unchangeable, and known to all.—The greater the body, the fewer and the more ſimple ought to be the manœuvres required of it.

The chief commander of a line muſt have ſeveral officers or other intelligent perſons at his diſpoſal, to mark and determine ſuch original points as become neceſſary in movement.

The great changes of ſituation of the line, are performed in open column of manœuvre.

The ſeveral general directions given for the ſingle ſquadron and regiment, extend to each ſquadron and regiment that make part of a conſiderable body.

In

In open column, the leading diviſion of each ſquadron preſerves the interval diſtance from the one before, in addition to that of its own front.—In column, at half or quarter diſtance, the diviſions of the regiment from front to rear are uniformly at that diſtance from each other, and from regiment to regiment there is a diſtance equal to the front of the column.

Not only the whole diviſions of a ſquadron, or regiment, but the whole regiments of a line or column ſhould MARCH off and HALT together.—To enſure this in the exerciſe of conſiderable bodies, ſignals of cannon are ſometimes given; but in general, the quick circulation of verbal orders muſt be ſufficient.

The ſame rules that direct the entry and march of one regiment in an alignement on which it is to form (S. 24. to 35.) apply with increaſed attention to thoſe of the moſt conſiderable column.—The point where the head of a column enters an alignement, and which is marked by a poſted perſon; the point where the head of the leading ſquadron halts; the ſeveral markers who are placed in the true line; the prolongation of ſquadrons who may have formed up.—All theſe are ſo many marked points, on which the dreſſing of pivots or regiments can be regulated, either while marching in the line, or when each halts, and is to be corrected, in order to wheel up into line.

S. 74. *General changes of Position of a Line when formed.*

Changes of position of a line, composed of several regiments, are according to circumstances effected by the *Echellon march*; the *flank* march of divisions, or the march of the regiments in *open column*—and points in the new line, will always in due time be ascertained, at which the leading division of each regiment is to enter.

---

1. *When a considerable Line is to take up a new Position, parallel, or nearly so, to the old one, in Front or Rear of it, and facing either to, or from the old Line.* Fig. 56. E. D.

If in front of and facing as the old line. Fig. 13. Fig. 14. — It may be done (according as the new line outflanks the old line, connected with other circumstances) by the *march* in line—the march in *Echellon* divisions, the *flank* march by three's of divisions.

Or the line will break into open column to whatever hand the new position outflanks the old one.—The several regiments are disengaged, and put in march in separate columns; flank points of entry for each, are in the mean time preparing by the detached adjutants;—the heads of the columns arrive at their Fig. 50.

several

ſeveral adjutants, and form in line by prolonging it; flank march of diviſions, or echellon marching, as may have been ordered.

If in front of and facing to the old line. — The regimental columns will, as before, enter and form on the line; within themſelves they need not be inverted, but the right of the line will now be the left, nor can it well be avoided,—unleſs by countermarching the line before the movement, or by countermarching the firſt regiment, and then the line after the movement.

If in rear of, and facing as the old line. — The ſame identical operations, according to circumſtances, are applied as when the poſition in front is taken, *facing as the old line*—the line or echellons after facing about; or the heads of regimental columns, after breaking, *March* to the rear and front, or form in line, *facing as the old line.*

If in the rear of, and facing from the old line. — The regimental colums will lead to the rear, and enter and form on the new line, the other circumſtances will take place, as when the line is in front of, and *faces to the old line.*

The echellon movements will not apply in this caſe, without inverting the ranks—or fronting and countermarching each ſquadron.

2 *When*

2. *When a considerable Line is to take up a new Position, which (or whose Prolongation) intersects to the Right or Left of the old Line, and which faces either to or from the old Line.* Fig. 56. C. B.

When the new line faces from the old line.

The line will break to which ever flank is nearest to the new position;—the heads of regimental columns will be separately conducted to their points in the new line; they will again enter into the general open column, and form in line by wheeling up. Fig. 50.

Or—The line, after breaking to the flank, may continue its march in column, enter, and prolong the new line till its head halts at its point in that line.—The rear regiments that have not entered, will disengage their heads, and separately march off in column to their several points of entry on the new line, which are marked by their adjutants. Fig. 51.

If the angle formed by the two lines, is not above the half of a right one, and that the flank of the new line is not very distant, this change may be made by the half wheel up of divisions, and their march in echellon, till they arrive and form up on the new line.

The line will break into open column towards the new position—the

When the new line faces to the old line. — general column will enter the new line at its neareſt point, prolong it if neceſſary, and when the head halts, the rear regiments will diſengage, and march to their points of entry on the new line.

Fig. 56. F. 3. *When a conſiderable Line has to take up a new Poſition, which (or the Prolongation of which) intersects the Body of the Line, and which faces to or from the old Line.*

When the new line interſects the body of the old line, and faces to either flank. — The poſition will be changed, by the echellon march of diviſions on the central point.

Fig. 15. 5. Or,—The diviſion which is in the point of interſection, will place its pivot flank perpendicular to the new direction, and the line will break inwards, facing to that diviſion—The diviſions of the central regiment, and of the one on each ſide of it, will by the flank march of their diviſions, place themſelves in column before and behind the ſtanding diviſion.—The other regiments will each be conducted in a ſeparate column to its point of entry on the new line, where it will throw itſelf into the general column, and wheel up into line when ordered.

The

When the prolongation of the new line, interfects the body of the line, and faces to either flank.

The line will break to the diviſion which ſtands in the point of interfection.—Every thing betwen that diviſion and the flank which is to be fartheſt removed from the old line, will make a change of poſition on the named diviſion, and ſtand in open column on the new line, facing to the named diviſion.—All the diviſions that have ſo changed poſition, will each countermarch by files--The line will then be prolonged, till the rear of the column arrives at its point.

Or,—The part of the line which is firſt thrown into the new direction, may ſo effect it, by the echellon march on the named fixed diviſion.—The whole will then wheel into open column, and prolong the line till the rear arrives at its point.

Or,—the named diviſion, being placed with its pivot perpendicular to the new direction, and fronting the way the line is to extend, the reſt of the line breaks towards it, and inwards.—That diviſion is then put in march, and is itſelf followed in column by that part of the line whoſe flank will naturally firſt come to its ground; the other part of the line moves on at the ſame time, in a ſeparate column abreaſt of it, the whole being thus in a double column of diviſions, as marched off from the center.—The *head*, and the column immediately behind it, *halts* when its following flank arrives at its proper point, but the other column proceeds,

Fig. 32.

oceds, and throws itſelf into open column, in front of the named diviſion:—The line is formed by the wheeling up of diviſions.

S. 75. *Taking up Lines of March, or Formation.*

The general direction of any ſtraight alignement on which troops are to form, is always determined before they enter on it, and the point in that line at which their head is to arrive muſt next be determined.—The markers of the line, as has been obſerved, always face to, and have their horſes heads hanging over the line; ſhould any of them, from the unſteadineſs of his horſe, be obliged to diſmount, in ſuch caſe he will himſelf ſtand on and faced to the line; and with the hand which is fartheſt from the column, he will hold his horſe by the head; and rather behind himſelf.

Before a column of march or manœuvre approaches the ground where it is to form, the commander will aſcertain, as circumſtances may determine him, the advanced and diſtant points at which the flanks of his line are to be placed, or which he intends to be in the prolongation of the line when formed.—If he enters his alignement at one of thoſe determined points, he continues his march ſtraight upon the poſted intermediate

mediate perſons, and the other point. But if he enters the alignement ſomewhere between them, it then becomes neceſſary to aſcertain the ſpot where the direction of his march interſects the new alignement, for at that point the head of the column arrives in it.

Method of finding an intermediate point between two diſtant objects. Fig. 53.

When the head of the advancing column (B) approaches whatever part of the ground it ought to arrive upon, two officers (R, S), are ſhewn the diſtant points of the alignement (P, T), and are ſent forward to determine the intermediate point (S) at which the head of the column ought exactly to enter into the new direction.—They ſeparate from each other 80 or 100 paces, go to the ſide to which the column is not to wheel; and (R) immediately places himſelf in the line of (S, P) advanced before the head of the column. ---They then both move on; (R) always preſerving (S) in a line with (P); and each deſcribing the portion of a circle upon (P) as a center.——(S) looks to (R), and moves on while the point (T) continues to be advanced before him; but the inſtant he has brought (R) in a line with (T) they both halt, and the four points are then in the ſame line——(R) remains fixed till (S) has ſhifted to the point (S) of interſection, and to enter at which the head of the column is now approaching.——This done, (R) alſo moves, if neceſſary, to within 60 or 70 paces of (S); and (S, R) thus become a general baſe, which the appointed officers and adjutants immediately prolong fo-

the march of the column, and in which they are aſſiſted, and corrected by the known diſtant point.

An intermediate point is thus found, between two given, and perhaps inacceſſible objects; and more than one column may in this manner aſcertain their relative points of entry in the ſame line.—As it may be taken up at a gallop, no halt or ſtop of the column is to be apprehended.

Fig. 53. *When two bodies are in march* to gain the ſame given point, the above method may moſt uſefully be employed.---The column (B) and enemy (D) are both in march on the point (S).---The leader of (B) obſerves a diſtant point at (C), beyond and a-head of the enemy (D): if he can continue to keep this object open and in front of the enemy, it is a certain ſign that he approaches faſteſt to his wiſhed for point: but if it appears as moving towards the rear of the enemy's march, it indicates the enemy's advantage, and the attempt muſt be given up in time.

S. 76. *When a conſiderable open Column enters, marches, and forms on a ſtraight Alignement.*

The direction of the line is prepared—and the column enters and marches along the line (as in S. 27.)

—The

—The whole HALT at the ſame moment, on that word being loudly and rapidly repeated by each commanding officer of ſquadrons, who immediately examines and corrects his pivots, and the column is thus prepared for the next order of wheeling up into line.

When the column halts in an alignement to form; the various marked points in it which then exiſt, give the greateſt facility to commanding officers inſtantly to correct their pivots if neceſſary, each on the next poſted marker in his rear; and which will alſo generally be made on the pivot of the front diviſion of the ſucceeding ſquadron, in the ſame manner as diviſions dreſs from the pivot of one to the pivot of the next; for ſuch correction ſhould be merely internal, unleſs ſome inexcuſable miſtake has deranged the whole, and thrown the rear of the column out of its true direction.

If great accuracy is required in the movements of a ſingle regiment in column, it is evident how much more eſſential it becomes in a more conſiderable one, where faults would operate in the proportion of its extent, if they are not immediately prevented, by the facility with which commanding officers can line and correct upon each other.

When a column halts to form: ſuch perſons as are then marking the direction, do not quit their poſts till ſo ordered, or till the line, after forming and being dreſſed, is put in march.

In marching in an alignement, if the rear or front of a regiment has evidently deviated from the true line, the head of the ſucceeding one is not to follow its bad example, but muſt preſerve the general given direction, into which the other is immediately to return. And no commander of a ſquadron or regiment when marching in an alignement is on any account to alter the rate of march, or partially to halt, and thereby to derange the whole column.

When part of a column is in low ground, or croſſing a valley, its march can be directed and aſſiſted by the rear points, at ſuch times as the front points of march are not to be ſeen.

Fig. 51.

S. 77. *When the Rear Regiments of a Column break from it in order to enter and form on an Alignement, in which the head ones have halted.*

If a conſiderable open column has at any time partly wheeled into, and prolonged a new direction, and that the head being arrived at its point, the whole are ordered to HALT, with an intention of forming line in the new direction:——On the ceſſation of march, the remaining diviſions of any regiment, whoſe head is now in the line, ſhall immediately, by flank marching, place themſelves on it. But all the other regiments in its rear, ſhall break from the general column, and each

each MARCH, quick and ſeparate in individual column till it arrives at its adjutant, who, having expeditiouſly lined himſelf on the head objects of the new line, will be now placed at its *rear* point of entry; the regiments will then prolong the line, and as they muſt have ſucceſſively arrived in it, each will halt when its head is at a due diſtance from the preceding regiment, its pivots will be corrected on its adjutant, and it will thus be ready to wheel up into line, when the next regiment ſhall have two ſquadrons, at leaſt, correctly ſtanding in column on the line.—Or the adjutants ſtill marking the rear points to their regiments, if ſo ordered, the head of each may be conducted to its reſpective head point, which is eaſily aſcertained from the preceding adjutant, and enter the line, (as in S. 41.)

A column marching at half or quarter diſtance may in the ſame manner take up its ground. The diviſion that is to ſtop at the point of entry being aſcertained, ſuch part of the column as is before that diviſion, will ſucceſſively there enter the line, and prolong it at open diſtance. In the mean time ſuch regiments as are behind that diviſion, breaking from the general column will march to their reſpective points, and extend along the line.

Fig. 24.

S. 78. *When a Line of several Regiments thrown into open Column, changes Position on a fixed Flank Division.*

The direction of the new line being aſcertained and prolonged, and the flank diviſion placed perpendicular to it (S. 36, 37) the whole wheel into open column, facing to the ſtanding diviſion.—The flank regiment wheels its diviſions to the flank, and marches them into column on the new line (S. 41.), but the head diviſion of each other regiment wheels and marches off quick in ſeparate column, to its adjutant, who marks its *rear* point in the new line; it there enters, prolongs, and wheels up each ſucceſſively (S. 42.)—Or, if ſo ordered, each may enter at its *head* point. (S. 41.)

Fig. 25.

S. 79. *When a line of several Regiments thrown into open Column, changes Position on a fixed central Division of any one Regiment.*

The direction of the new line being aſcertained and prolonged, and the central diviſion placed perpendicular to it (S. 38.) the whole line wheel up into open column, ſo as to ſtand faced to the central diviſion.

diviſion---The diviſions of the central regiment proceed to *wheel by three's* to their flank, march, and place their pivot flanks in column on the new line, (S. 38.)—But the head diviſion of each other regiment wheels, and marches quickly in ſeparate column to which ever hand neceſſarily conducts it towards its proper *rear* point in the new line, which is marked by its adjutant, it there enters, prolongs, &c. as in the preceding ſection.

In central changes of a regiment or line:—The movements of the right wing, whether thrown forward or backward, are thoſe of a column with the left in front, the rights being the pivot flanks: and the movements of the left wing are thoſe of a column with the right in front, the lefts being the pivot flanks.---In changes of poſition on the right of a regiment or line, the movements are thoſe of a column with the right in front.---In changes of poſition on the left of a regiment or line, the movements are thoſe of a column with the left in front.

S. 80. *When a Line of ſeveral Regiments thrown into open Column, changes Position on a moving central Diviſion.* Fig. 52.

The direction of the new line being aſcertained and prolonged, the named diviſion (a) will be wheeled and placed with its pivot flank perpendicular to, and

on

on the new direction, fronting the way the line is to extend; and if to the rear, it muſt therefore countermarch:—The line will then break by diviſions ſo as to ſtand faced to the named diviſion, (and if it breaks backwards it will ſtand to more advantage.)---That diviſion (a) will now be put in march along the new direction, and be followed in double column by the remaining diviſions of the central regiment, and covered by one of thoſe columns, viz. by that whoſe flank, in prolonging the new line, will naturally firſt arrive at its proper ground, and which march with their pivots upon that line.---When the named diviſion arrives at his new point (a, 2.) it will, together with thoſe that are marching behind it, receive the word to HALT!---Such diviſions of its regiment, which are to be in front of it, and are now marching by its ſide in column, and are ſeparated from it by a diſtance of three or four paces, will move on, and by marching from their pivot flanks, will ſucceſſively. place themſelves in column before, and facing to it at a double wheeling diſtance.

The other regiments, which moved when the central one did, which in the mean time have been marching each in ſeparate column, led by its inward flank diviſion, and which have been to front or rear, relatively to the movements of the central regiment approaching but not entering into its line of direction, except ſuch as would naturally follow on the prolongation of the line: thoſe regiments will, when the central one HALTS, march quickly towards their ſeveral adjutants, who have been detached to mark their *rear* points,

points, and then enter, prolong, and wheel up into line as already directed.——In this movement, ſome of the regiments near the central one might form to advantage on their *head* point, by marching from their pivot flanks into line, and if ſo ordered they may do it accordingly.

———

If the named diviſion is a flank one of a central regiment.—In that caſe the whole of that regiment will follow it in one column only, and the adjoining regiment will compoſe another column, and march abreaſt of it, ſeparated by three or four paces, till the named regiment comes to its ground and halts; the adjoining regiment will then proceed, and by its diviſions marching round from their pivot flanks, will (ſtanding faced to the directing one) take its place in the general column, in order to form into line.

This movement of the given diviſion is equivalent to the line marching from a central point either to front or rear, and from that ſituation forming away to the flanks: or to the whole line firſt marching forward or backward, and then making a central change on a fixed point. At the ſame time that it changes the front of a line, it carries the flanks to whatever point in that line it is meant they ſhould reſt at: It is the movement which a ſecond line does make, in order to comply with a change of poſition made by the firſt line, on a fixed point.

Fig. 54.

S. 81. *When the Head of a considerable open Column in March, arrives at or near the Point where it is to begin to take an oblique Position, (B) facing to its then Rear, and at which Point its eighth, ninth, or any other named Squadron, is to be placed.*

In general, the column, after entering the new line, would continue its march in that direction till the named ſquadron arrived, and was halted at the point of entry; the ſquadrons and regiments that had not entered into the line would then break off from the old direction and gain the new one.—But if a line had wheeled into ſuch a column, was marching parallel to an enemy's poſition, that its head had paſſed the enemy's flank point as far as was intended, and that the object was to take an oblique line, and attack that flank; in ſuch ſituation it might be hazardous to allow the rear of the column which was deſtined to become the refuſed flank of the new line, to remain ſo long in its parallel direction, and it might be eſſential to draw it farther off from the enemy as ſoon as poſſible, eſpecially if cannon could be brought up againſt it.

Suppoſe the column conſiſts of five regiments, that the head of the fourth ſhall be placed at the point (d) of interſection.——The column moves on, and when the

the head of it arrives at the point (d) in the new line, the two, or any proportion of the leading regiments, may, by the ſucceſſive wheeling of their diviſions, enter and march along it in the ordinary manner.—But as ſoon as the leading diviſion of the column does enter it, the third, fourth, and every other regiment, breaks off ſeparately to the rear, and march quick in columns to gain the new line:—The third aſſembles in cloſe column a little beyond the point of interſection (d), and behind the new line; the fourth, entering at its adjutant, who marks its rear, forms in open column on the new line with its head at the point (d), and all the other rear regiments form alſo relatively in open column on the new line:—The two leading regiments having in the mean time prolonged the line, when it comes to the turn of the third (now in cloſe column) it ſucceſſively takes its diſtances, follows in open column, as alſo all the others, 'till the whole are ordered to halt, and the line to be formed by wheeling up.

The juſtneſs of this movement depends;---on the points in the new direction being taken up quickly and with preciſion;---on the previous determination that a certain regiment or ſquadron ſhall paſs or halt at the point of interſection and entry,---and that every part of the column which is behind that ſquadron or regiment, ſhall throw itſelf into open column on the new line, behind the point of entry, ready to prolong, or to form the line, whenever it comes to their turn.

This

This movement will often take place in the change of poſition of a ſecond line, and is performed by all thoſe that are behind the diviſion which is to ſtop where the old and new line interſects. At all times when the open column changes into a direction on which it is to form, that the diviſion which is to be placed at the point of entry can be determined, and that there is no impropriety in other reſpects, the operation will be facilitated by making every thing behind that diviſion gain the new line as quickly as poſſible, without waiting till the head of the column halts.

Fig. 54. C. *Suppoſe the column* marching on a line parallel to an enemy's front, to have entered oppoſite one flank, and to be marching towards the other, as if meaning to form in parallel line; but that circumſtances determine to form in oblique line (c), and attack the flank it has paſſed. The column will be halted when the rear has arrived at a determined point in the line: each diviſion of the column will countermarch: the ſquadron that is to reſt at the point of entry will be named: the whole will be put in motion.——Two or three of the leading regiments continuing their march, will, by the ſucceſſive wheeling of their diviſions, prolong the new direction. Such following ones as are to be before the point of interſection (a) will aſſemble cloſe to it; ſuch others as are to be behind it, will at once march off quickly and ſeparately to their points of entry on the new line, and ſtand in open column upon it: In proportion as the head advances, the whole will extend

tend along the line in open column, be halted and formed by wheeling up.

Or under the before mentioned circumſtances—The column when in march parallel to the enemy, may be ſtopt, at the time that a named ſquadron is oppoſite to his flank, and ſuch part as is before that ſquadron will remain in column.---Whatever part is then behind the named ſquadron will, from the rear of the whole, countermarch by ſucceſſive diviſions, and from the named ſquadron will prolong a new direction oblique to the enemy's flank---The ſquadron that is to reſt at the point of entry will be given, and at the proper inſtant the diviſions which have remained on the parallel line will each be ordered to countermarch, the regiments to aſſemble (as before) at the point of interſection, and in ſucceſſion to join the general column, to form in line.——The part of the column which originally halts may be wheeled into line, and for ſome time remain faced to the enemy: in that caſe its diviſions will have to wheel into column and not countermarch, when they are ordered to regain the new poſition.

———

A line formed parallel to an enemy changes ſituation in the above manner, by wheeling into open column, marching on to the point of interſection, and then taking up the new oblique ſituation.

If a column moving parallel to an enemy ſhould ſtop and take up a new poſition on any point then within itſelf, ſuch formation would be a central one, and made either on a fixed or moveable diviſion.

Fig. 55

S. 82. *Formation in Line on detached Adjutants, from the Aſſembly in Column.*

If a column of ſeveral regiments has halted at half, quarter, or cloſe diſtance, or that its regiments have aſſembled in contiguous columns, with ſmall intervals betwixt them, and that they are to extend into a line which is at ſome diſtance from their then ſituation, on their reſpective adjutants, and facing either to the front or to the rear.

A regiment is named to be formed on either a flank or central one of the new line, but it ſhould be that one which, being placed at the point of appui, determines the poſition of the line, and therefore will commonly be a flank one.---Each adjutant always marks that flank of his regiment in the new line, at which its head is to enter, and where its *rear* diviſion in column is to reſt, and therefore it is that flank which is fartheſt from the point of appui; if his regiment is to march with its right in front, he marks its left, and if with the left in front, he marks its right.--It is there-

fore

fore often neceſſary, that ſome or all of the regimental columns ſhould ſeparately countermarch (S. 46.) at their place of aſſembly, in order to move off with their proper flank in front, and thereby enter the new line at their reſpective adjutants.

Suppoſing, therefore, that the regiments are ſtanding in columns *(the right in front)* either in general column, or in contiguous ones.---If the poſition is to be taken from the *right* (B) of the new line, the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each ſucceſſively marking his own left (a.)---If to be taken from the *left* (D) the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each marking his own right (a); and the regiments, on ſeparating from the general maſs, will each countermarch, ſo as to arrive at its adjutant, a column with the left in front.——If to be taken from a *central* point (C), both flanks of that regiment muſt be marked; its adjutant, and thoſe of the regiments ſtanding to its left, (or behind it, if in column) will mark each his own left, the adjutants of the regiments to its right (or before it if in column) will mark each its own right, and thoſe regiments will in conſequence have to countermarch, ſo as to enter with their left in front, and in this manner will the whole ſtand in the new line, facing to the central point. Fig. 55.

Theſe circumſtances determined and underſtood, all the adjutants are ſent forward to the ground of the named regiment; the general direction of the line is aſcertained by *baſe markers*; the flank point of entry is taken by the adjutant of the named regiment, and

all the others from him, ſucceſſively prolonging the line, mark their reſpective points of entry, each in ſo doing allowing ground for the front, and one interval of his regiment, from the laſt placed adjutant before him.—They are therefore expected to give ground quickly according to circumſtances, both by their eye and by the pace of their horſes.

In the mean time the whole are put in motion, and when ſufficiently advanced, they HALT.—Such regiments as are to countermarch, are ordered ſo to do, and each then diverges to right or left, avoids croſſing or interference, and marches quickly to its own point of entry, opening its diviſions in the courſe of the march.—At that point, a momentary halt is made by each; its head diviſion wheels into the line, the others ſucceſſively follow it at open diſtances (S. 29. 42.) till the word HALT is given on the arrival of the rear diviſion at that point. The regiment thus ſtanding in open column, and its pivots being corrected on the adjutant, is ready to wheel up into the line, which is in this manner ſeparately entered by each regiment, whether it is to face to the front or to the rear of the march.

As the adjutant always marks the point where the *rear* diviſion of his regimental column is to be placed, ſo the point where the head one is to reſt will be of courſe eaſily known (and may be alſo marked in due time by another detached perſon) being at the diſtance of a proper ſquadron interval, and the front of a di-

viſion

viſion from the preceding adjutant. The ſeveral adjutants, when placed, become ſo many points of march to the regiments that are prolonging the line.

Although unneceſſary ground may ſeem to be gone over by the head diviſions of ſome of the regiments, when they enter at their rear point, yet the rule that each of them ſhall enter the line, where its *rear* is to reſt, is ſimple, general, and moſt readily corrects any miſtakes that may be made: and, all circumſtances conſidered, it is a quicker and ſurer manner of forming on the new poſition than if the regiments were to enter at their head, or at any central point. General Rule.

Although the adjutant does always mark the *rear* flank of his regimental column, yet as its head point, or any intermediate one, is afterwards eaſily aſcertained, it can (when particularly ſo ordered) enter at either of thoſe points, as well as at the rear one, for any of thoſe operations places the whole in open column in the new line.

If the adjutants miſjudge their points and diſtances, there will be falſe intervals in the line, which can only be remedied by the regiments marching on the line, to their proper diſtances, before they HALT.—If the regiment of *appui* is neareſt to the new line, and the firſt to form on it, then, as all the others muſt enter it ſucceſſively, any inaccurate marking of the adjutants may be eaſily remedied by each marching up to its juſt diſtance from its preceding one before it HALTS. But if the regiment of *appui* is the laſt to enter the

line, each muſt then HALT at the point marked by its adjutant, and no correction can be attempted till the regiment of appui has halted, and that the whole are in one general column.

Poſitions taken to front or flanks.

When regiments aſſemble in line of contiguous cloſe columns, they ſhould be ſo placed, that no croſſing or retardment of the after march may be occaſioned.——If the new poſition to be taken faces the ſame way as the columns do, the regiments ſhould ſtand in their natural order, from right to left.——If the poſition to be taken faces to the rear of the column, the regiments ſhould aſſemble in the reverſe order, ſo that the right one ſhall be on the left; or if they otherwiſe aſſemble at firſt, they muſt countermarch in maſs, in order to ſtand ſo.

Poſitions taken to the front or flanks.
Fig 56.

If poſitions are to be taken up to the front (E), or to the flanks (B. C.)—the circumſtances already mentioned will determine from what point the general line will be given, and what flank of his regiment each adjutant ſhall mark.—The ſeveral regimental columns (having countermarched if neceſſary, and if ſtanding in general column having diſengaged into an echellon poſition) march towards their adjutants, taking care to diverge to that hand which does not croſs the path of the leading regiment, or of each other; and when they approach the new line, whatever way it fronts, each is in a ſituation to enter it at its *rear* point, or, if particularly ſo ordered, at any other given point.

If

If positions (D) are to be taken in the rear, each regiment will countermarch its divisions by files, so that the columns stand with their left in the front.—The regiments then, having the new position before them, will proceed accordingly. Positions taken to the rear. Fig. 56.

As in changes of position, the arrival and formation of regiments in line is generally successive, the adjutant if he is alert, will always have sufficient time to take up his ordered point of entry; as to the direction of the line, he can never fail in it, if he carefully prolongs such persons as he sees already placed in it, and such part of the troops as are formed on it.

The quickness and accuracy of all formations of the line, and of all changes from one position to another, depend totally on the intelligence of each commanding officer, who always conducts the leading division of his regiment to its point of entry in the new line; and also of the adjutant, who prolonging that line, marks the point of his last division, and is himself the object on which the pivots of the column, or the divisions of the echellon or column that successively come into line, are dressed upon.—When the adjutant marks the *rear* point for the entry of the regimental column, he must be accurate both in his distances and direction; when he marks it only as a point of dressing for divisions that successively arrive in line, the justness of direction is then the material object.

CLOSE COLUMN OF THE LINE.

The chief objects of the aſſembly of troops in cloſe column have been already mentioned.

The cloſe column, when exceeding twelve or fourteen ſquadrons, becomes unwieldy.——Where numbers permit that more than one column can be formed, the columns of march may be ſubdivided, when they come near the points of forming into line, be directed upon them, and then cloſed up.

In general, the regiments of a conſiderable column ſhould ſtand a ſquadron in front, before they begin to deploy.

From cloſe column, the whole, or any part of the body, may be ordered to extend into line, to either hand as circumſtances may require.

The diſtances in cloſe column have been already mentioned.

A cloſe column of two, or even three regiments may occaſionally deploy in the ſame manner as a ſingle regiment does, and on any diviſion; but in proportion to the extent of the column does the difficulty of execution increaſe, the formation may be inaccurate and defective, and the ground they have to move over is more likely to preſent rubs and embarraſſments.——

Therefore,

Therefore, when ſeveral regiments are halted in a cloſe column of half ſquadrons or ſquadrons, according to the front on which they are to ſtand before deploying, they may firſt deploy in maſs on any named one, and thus ſtand in contiguous line of regimental columns, with the diſtance of a half ſquadron interval between each, and with the whole ſerrefiles in the rear of each. From this ſituation, the whole will then deploy into line on any named diviſion of any regiment.

S. 83. *When a Column of March of ſeveral Regiments forms cloſe Column, and then extends into Line.* Fig. 57.

FORM COLUMN OF DIVISIONS!

CLOSE TO QUARTER DISTANCE!

When it is found proper to ſhorten the column of march, and to aſſemble the troops—The column (if marching on a ſmaller front) forms into diviſions, and the rear ones are ordered to cloſe up to a certain diſtance. The leading diviſion of the column either halts, or the rear ones quicken their march, and cloſe up to quarter diſtance.

Column

FORM COLUMN OF HALF SQUADRONS! — Column of half ſquadrons is then formed, either from the halt, or on the move, and cloſe up to quarter diſtance.

MOVE ON TO CLOSE COLUMN! — When arrived near to where the line is to be formed, the head is halted parallel to the intended line, if its direction can then be aſcertained, and the rear diviſions move on to cloſe column.

FORM COLUMN OF SQUADRONS! — Column of ſquadrons is then formed, if it is ſo required (S. 62.) and the whole advances to the line, which is now determined and given; the leading ſquadron halts on it, and the others ſucceſſively halt in cloſe column, at their proper deploying diſtances.

MOVE ON TO CLOSE COLUMN!

REGIMENTAL COLUMNS WILL DEPLOY ON THE THIRD REGIMENT. — The third or any other regiment is then named, as the one which is to give the ground on the line, and the adjutants take points in the line from it, for the inward flanks of their reſpective regiments.

The

THE COLUMN BY THREE'S, WHEEL OUTWARDS! — The third regiment ſtands faſt, each other one in maſs wheels ranks by three's to its proper flank.

MARCH! — Each marches to the flank without opening out.

MARCH! HALT! DRESS! — When the third regiment is uncovered, it marches forward to its place in line, and halts.

HALT! FRONT! MARCH! HALT! DRESS! — The regiments that are marching to the flanks, as ſoon as they have acquired a half interval from each other, will ſucceſſively HALT, FRONT, MARCH, and HALT, by the third regiment which is now on the line.

THE LINE WILL BE FORMED ON THE THIRD DIVISION OF THE THIRD REGIMENT. — The line being now prolonged by markers to both flanks—A CAUTION is given that the whole will deploy on any named diviſion of any one regiment; for example on the third half ſquadron or ſquadron of the third regiment.

The

BY THREE'S, OUTWARDS, WHEEL! — The two right regiments, and the front divisions of the third, wheel ranks by three's to the right, and all the rest to the left.

MARCH! — The whole move quick to the flanks, except the named division, which advances into the alignement, and the rest of the third regiment proceeds to make a central formation on it. (S. 61.)

HALT!
Wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dress!
March!
Halt! Dress! — The other regiments continue their march, till each arrives at the point where its inward flank is to be placed; and when each does so, such flank division, whether it is a front or rear one, HALTS, FRONTS, and occupies its place in line, while the other divisions proceed, and make their deployment upon it.—In this manner the regiments successively deploy (S. 61.) observing the general attentions already given.

The

The points of marching and forming upon muſt be well defined: the head diviſions of regiments that move along the line muſt do it accurately, and by no means get before it; the ranks by three's muſt march correct, and the beginning of the deployment of each regiment muſt be well timed, otherwiſe the general line will be ill taken up.---The general line is that on which the regiment ſtood before the deployment begun, and the ſeveral adjutants will carefully and quickly prolong it, each giving a point near to where the outward flank of his own regiment will extend.

The regimental columns WHEEL by three's, and ſeparate from the general column, by a command given for the whole by the chief; but each column is halted, fronted, and brought up into line by its reſpective commanding officer.——In like manner, when the ſeveral columns are on their line of formation, they will WHEEL by three's, and MARCH by word of command from the chief; but each will be ordered to DEPLOY at the proper place, by its own commanding officer.

When ſeveral regimental cloſe columns ſtand arranged along ſide of each other, and are in concert to deploy into line, the named one of formation only can be required to form either on the front, a *central*, or the rear diviſion; but each of the others neceſſarily form either on its front, or on its rear one, as the circumſtances of ſituation demand.

After

After the column of march has closed up to quarter distance, the leading regiment may, when thought proper, be at once directed to its point of halting, and the others may successively diverge from the column, arrange themselves as before along side of it, and double up to column of half, or whole squadrons.—The line of regimental columns is thus ready to deploy, or to advance, and then deploys as near the enemy as appears safe, in a parallel or in an oblique direction, which may be given by the previous placing of the several regimental columns in such oblique direction.

S. 84. *Oblique Deployments.*

Fig. 58. a. The deployment of the close column into a line *oblique* to the one on which its head then stands, may in some situations be required, where circumstances do not permit of the previous operation of placing the column perpendicular to such line—as when a wing is to be lengthened out but refused, or an enemy's flank to be gained, by throwing forward one or more regiments which have advanced in close column behind the point of a wing; or when the nature of the ground on which the column stands demands a deployment that will give support to a flank, or preserve the advantage of a position.

Such

Such deployments muſt be made by the troops, as ſtanding in one column, and by the whole, as if one regiment according to the mode preſcribed for it; for they do not apply to regiments ſeparated and ſtanding in maſs on the ſame line.—If more than one or two regiments take up an oblique line, it will require great attention in the commanders to preſerve order, and to form with juſtneſs.—Such formations are required on the front diviſion of the regiment only.—Whenever circumſtances permit the column to be placed perpendicular to its line of formation, it muſt always be done: oblique formations are unavoidable exceptions.

S. 85. *When several close Columns are formed from Parts of the same Line.*

The parts of the line which are to compoſe each column are named; each regiment forms a cloſe column on one of its own named diviſions.---The ſeveral regimental cloſe columns march by a flank, and place themſelves before or behind the directing regiment of that general column to which they are to belong.

Fig. 59. 60. *S.* 86. *If several close Columns are halted at accidental Distances, but with their Heads dressed, and are ordered to form in One Line.*

At whatever diſtance the heads of the cloſe columns are halted from each other, the ſeparate regiments will move up into line, each column upon its own named regiment.—The point and diviſion on which the whole are to form will be named; the whole will extend from it; the diſtances and commencement of movement will be taken from the named point, ſo that the outward regiments may move ſucceſſively, as it becomes neceſſary to preſerve their diſtances from the inward ones.---Or the adjutants taking their points from the given one of appui, the columns will in the meantime be previouſly ſo placed as not to croſs, or interfere in the march; the regiments of each will then diſengage, march, enter, and form on the line.

S. 87. *If two Columns halted at open, half, or quarter Distance, are to exchange Places.*

The diviſions of each will wheel inwards by three's, or two's, and march.—When they have approached each other, one of them halts, the other continues in march,

march and pass through the intervals of the halted one.—Both columns then move on until they arrive, halt, and front on the ground which each other occupied, and which has been properly marked and preserved for them: During this flank march, the heads of the divisions are kept nearly dressed, and are regulated in each column by the two head divisions.—This operation is necessary, when a line is to be taken up, and formed on, facing the reverse way to what the columns then do; and if such line is in the rear of the columns, they also countermarch their divisions by files, in order to enter and prolong it.—This mode of columns exchanging situation, which is equivalent to the passage of lines, may be required on several occasions.

S. 88. *When Two Columns are to form in Line in any given Position.* Fig. 61.

Points are prepared—The columns by marching, countermarching, exchange of situation by three's, or by whatever other operation is necessary, are brought up with their heads to the given points in the new line. The columns close up: the regiments disengage, place themselves on the new line; the division or divisions of formation are named, so as to fill up the interval between the columns, and the whole relatively deploy into line.—Or, points being prepared by

the ſeveral adjutants, the regiments will diſengage at a due diſtance, march on their reſpective points, and form in line.

Fig. 60.

S. 89. *If there are Two Columns, compoſed each of Parts of Two Lines, which are to form.*

The regiments of the ſecond line will halt at a proper diſtance from the firſt, and deploy or form in line, in the ſame manner as the firſt one does—or, if the firſt line is to form facing to the rear, the ſecond one will have to proceed, and to paſs it, in order to arrive at its relative ſituation.

If two lines march off to the front, in two, three, or four columns, each compoſed of part of the two lines: advance at certain diſtances from each other to where their heads enter on two given paralle lines: wheel their heads to a flank into, and prolong thoſe lines to any extent.—Then as the columns of each line have of courſe joined each other, the whole will be moving in two columns of lines, ready to form by a wheel up to the flanks when the object of the movement is accompliſhed, which probably may be the outflanking or turning the flank of an enemy.

If two lines marching in columns of lines to a flank; are unexpectedly obliged to make front to that flank: Then the new lines will be compoſed each of part of the old ones, by their moving up to right and left, to form to the leading diviſions of the columns, and the interval between the columns will, in the courſe of the operation, be filled up by the neceſſary number of diviſions from each column, the heads of which will have wheeled and marched towards each other for that purpoſe.

ECHELLON OF THE LINE.

The echellon movements, of a great corps, place it in an advantageous ſituation; to diſconcert an enemy; to make a partial attack, or a gradual retreat. Different previous manœuvres ought always to have diverted the attention of an enemy, and prevented him from being certain where the attack is to be made, It may be formed from the center, or from either of the wings reinforced: If ſucceſsful, the diviſions move up into line to improve the advantage: If repulſed, they are in a good ſituation to protect the retreat. In advancing, the ſeveral bodies move independent, act freely, and are ready to aſſiſt. In retiring, they fall

Echellon movements of a great corps.

gradually back on each other, and thereby give mutual aid and support.

Strength of echellons.

The echellons of a line are, according to its ſtrength, of three, four, or five ſquadrons each—Though their flanks ſeem multiplied, they are not expoſed, as they cover each other.

Oblique march.

Echellons ſeen at a diſtance appear as if a full line: being ſhort and independent lines, they can the eaſier march obliquely to outwing an enemy, or to preſerve the points of appui to a wing; and ſuch movement may not be perceptible to an enemy.

Echellon formed on any diviſion.

The echellon may be formed direct from line, on a flank or any central diviſion, either marching or halted, to front or rear.

Partial formation in echellon.

The whole, or only part of a line may be thrown into echellon, and that either to the front or rear.—In the firſt caſe to gain the flank of an enemy: In the ſecond to refuſe or cover one's own flank.

Directing point.

When the echellon is unconnected with a line, the advanced flank or diviſion regulates all its movements: When attached to a line it muſt depend on the motions of that line.

The ſame general principles of movement and formation apply to all echellons ſimilarly formed, however great or ſmall they may be, and whether they are acting to the front or rear.

Echellons

Echellons move forward by their directing flank, which is always the one advanced from, or wheeled to. Directing flank.

By at any time halting the echellon, the leading diviſion may be changed, and inſtead of one flank the other may be made the advanced one; or inſtead of an echellon formed from a flank, it may be converted into an echellon formed from the center; this is effected on any named diviſion by the relative and perpendicular movements of the others to the front or rear: In this operation, when the echellon is a direct one, the diviſions of it will exactly paſs each other's flank.

S. 90. *When a conſiderable Line changes to an oblique Poſition, by the Echellon March of Half Squadrons.*

If the new line interſects any part of the old line.— Fig. 47. The regiment ſo interſected will make its change of poſition on that fixed point, flank or central, (S. 71.) and all the others will march in echellon, whether forward or backward to their reſpective points in the new line, before they ſucceſſively begin to form in it. (S. 72.)

Fig. 45. *If the new line interſects the prolongation of the old line.*—A point will be given in the new line where the leading flank is to be placed.—The leading diviſion will be wheeled ſo that it may move perpendicular on that point, and all the other diviſions of the line will wheel up the ſame degree: The whole will march up in echellon, regarding their leading flank as a moveable center; and as each regiment arrives at the new line it will halt, and form in it by a new interior arrangement. (S. 70.)

In theſe changes of poſition, the whole echellons of a line are ſituated, and may be conſidered relatively the ſame as the half ſquadrons or echellons of a regiment: The whole move together and connected; each regiment arrives ſucceſſively at its point in the new line, and each, as ſoon as it arrives, begins its formation on it.—So that whether it is the regiment or line which ſo changes, the march is made with preciſion, and each echellon forms up in ſucceſſion.

Fig. 46. *S. 91. When the Line marches obliquely outwards in Echellon of Half Squadrons, and changes Position inwards to move upon a Flank which it has gained.*

The line formed and halted marches to the flank in echellon of half ſquadrons, (S. 68.) forms in line parallel

parallel to the one it quitted, (S. 69.), and if it then inſtantly makes an oblique change of poſition, (S. 71.) it will be placed in a ſituation to march forward with the greateſt advantage on the weak point of the enemy;—or according to the diſtance from the point of attack; the line, after reſuming its parallel ſituation, may move forward a given ſpace, then make its oblique change of ſituation, and again march on in the new direction it has acquired on the enemy's flank.

S. 92. When from Line parallel to an Enemy considerable Echellons advance from a Flank to the Front. Fig. 62, 63.

The diviſions of the line, and the diſtance of echellons being announced; the flank echellon moves on: When it has acquired the given diſtance, the next one follows: and thus ſucceſſively till the whole is in motion: The whole halt when the leading echellon halts.

Two under officers from each following echellon will Fig. 62. march in the line of each preceding one, ſo as to ſtop when the preceding one does, in its juſt prolongation and at the points at which the flanks of their echellon is to be halted, when it is required to move up into line, and whoſe poſition in ſuch line muſt be thereby

eaſily and accurately determined. When ſuch detached under officers ſtop, each ſquadron will ſend forward to mark its inward flank in the prolonged line.

It depends alone on the conductor of the leading echellon when it halts, to give it ſuch a direction, that its prolongation ſhall paſs before the enemy's front, and not be expoſed to an enfilade.

Notwithſtanding every meaſure taken to obtain exact parallel lines, the following echellons muſt, and on the march will be guided by and conform to the leading one: Their great object is, to preſerve in moving on their parallel and relative ſituations, their ordered diſtances, and proper flank interval.—In this they are to act in the ſame manner as when advancing in line; and having the leading echellon to guide them, together with the aſſiſtance of the officers, who attend to their movements, and prevent their outward flanks from being thrown too forward, they may execute with juſtneſs this important manœuvre.

Fig. 63. When large echellons, having marched forward are to wheel up to their advanced flank, and form in line oblique to the one from which they departed.—The outward flanks. which are to be the ſtanding ones, muſt be halted as ſoon as each touches the line on which the formation is to be made: And for this purpoſe a line muſt be ready marked by advanced perſons (prolonged from the leading echellon) on which

ſuch

ſuch flank is to halt, and on no account to paſs it.—Each echellon forms in line by a change of poſition on that flank: but if there is not a previous arrangement of diſtances, and a degree of doubling of each, in proportion to the intended obliquity of the line, there will be increaſed intervals between the echellons.

S. 93. *When a Line formed on and beyond an Enemy's Flank, moves to the Attack in Echellon.* Fig 64.

The echellon, which is then placed perpendicular to the point of the enemy's flank, will move on, the reſt will ſucceſſively follow it from each hand, and at their preſcribed diſtance: The echellons on one flank will be refuſed, and on the other they will advance beyond the leading one to envelope the enemy.

S. 94. *When a Line formed in front of, and obliquely to the Enemy, moves forward from a Flank to the Attack in Echellon parallel to the Enemy.* Fig 56.

The number of echellons, and ſtrength of each, being aſcertained and announced, the echellons will naturally

naturally be formed to and led by the advanced flank. —Great care muſt be taken in placing the flank directing half ſquadron of each echellon, to which its other component parts form, as in (S. 71.)—The echellons thus formed will be doubled behind each other, in proportion to the degree of wheel made, and were they to move directly forward to form with the leading one, a portion of each would thereby be cut off, and the general extent of the line reduced; this is to be remedied either by an early attention to taking the neceſſary and greater intervals than uſual, before forming the oblique line; or before the whole advances, making the echellons take ground to the flanks, and place themſelves in their proper relative ſituations, as they would be when formed from parallel line——Suppoſing this done, the whole may move on, either from the advanced or retired flank, and when proper, march up into parallel line: ſhould this not be done, part of each echellon would of courſe be excluded on forming the general line, and muſt remain behind it.

Whether the original line is formed parallel or obliquc to the enemy's front, the echellons before marching are always to be placed perpendicular to the line on which they are to move.——From this ſituation a diagonal march on the enemy's flank may be made, and in ſuch caſe large echellons muſt be broken into half ſquadrons; but it is an operation difficult in the execution, that would require much circumſpection, and if attempted too near would be very dangerous,

as

as the flank thrown up is expoſed to an enemy's enfilade.

This attack can be at once formed from a column of march, or the open column of a line which is prolonging a direction upon, and oblique to that of the enemy.---The column will halt, wheel into line, and, without any ſenſible pauſe, the leading flank half ſquadron of each echellon will wheel up parallel to the enemy, the other diviſions of the line will each wheel up half that ſpace, and move on into their ſeveral echellons: the whole will then be ready to advance, led by any named echellon. Fig. 65.

The attacks of conſiderable bodies are almoſt always conducted on the principles of the echellon.---There are few ſituations where the whole could act at the ſame time, or where it would be prudent or eligible ſo to do: they are therefore made by fractions of a line, well ſupported and reinforced.

S. 95. *With reſpect to the Enemy, and the intended Movement, the Echellon Position may be taken from the* { *Parallel oblique Column.* } *Position.*

If from the line parallel to the enemy.—It is previouſly divided into the ſeveral echellons which are to compoſe

poſe it; and the diſtance at which they are to remain behind each other is announced.---The reinforced flank or center which is to attack, is then ordered to advance; each echellon of three or more ſquadrons moves on, when the preceding one has gained the ordered diſtance of (perhaps 100) paces, and thus being regulated by the head, act according to the event of the attack.

Fig. 65. 66. *If from the line oblique to the enemy.*---This poſition having been taken from the columns of march, or in the courſe of advancing in line; and the diviſions of the echellons being aſcertained, they are formed by wheeling up parallel to the enemy, and to each other; the advanced or retired wing may then proceed to the attack, and ſupported by the others, will act according to circumſtances. One may attack on any degree of obliquity, and by abſolutely refuſing one wing, place it in a ſituation the more readily to protect a retreat, ſhould it be neceſſary, and which will be greatly ſtrengthened, if a point of appui can be given to ſuch refuſed wing.

If from columns halted perpendicular, or nearly ſo, to the enemy.—Their heads are halted at given relative points, and given diſtances; the attacking bodies form in one or more lines, the others extend to the flank in echellon, being ſeparated perpendicularly, a ſpace equal to the diſtances they halted at in their ſeveral columns:

columns: this ſpace is augmented if neceſſary, when the whole move on, and lines of three or more ſquadrons each are thus formed.—From the echellon poſition, by flank marching, the order of column may again be reſumed. Fig. 67. 68.

The advanced echellon being arrived at its object, the attack is given, and the others attend the event.—If it ſucceeds, they move up into line to perfect it.—If it fails, each falling back on each is ſtrengthened, and ſupported every inſtant of the retreat; this will generally be done by the echellons in the courſe of retiring, at the ſame time making a gradual wheel backwards on the poſted flank of the corps, which one muſt conclude is ſupported with artillery, to check and enfilade an advancing enemy.

The ſecond line, when there is one, follows in every thing the echellon movements of the firſt:---The regiments make the ſame degree of wheel, preſerve the ſame relative poſition, and ſerve as a ſupport to the firſt; the attack of the ſecond line moves on therefore at the ſame time with that which it is to ſupport.---The echellons of one or more lines are generally retired from one hundred to one hundred and fifty paces, each behind the one preceding of its own line.---When neceſſary to relieve them, the echellons of the firſt line may retire through thoſe of the ſecond.

Where

Where a line is paſſing a defilé to the front, and from or near its center.——After paſſing, it may firſt form at the head of the defilé in the echellon poſition; the ſeveral diviſions are then ready to move up into line, or by wheels towards the flanks, to form in oblique lines, and protect thoſe flanks.---It may alſo in the ſame manner paſs a defilé to the rear, retiring from the flanks by echellon, and then from the outward flanks of echellon, towards the rear, while the center protects the movement.

The line, for convenience, may occaſionally advance in echellon of ſquadrons.—Each being retired behind the rear rank of its preceding one, ſo that the front rank of one dreſſes with the ſerrefile rank of the other.—The ſquadron of direction is the leading one, which muſt march with the greateſt exactneſs, and when ſo ordered, the whole can in an inſtant move up into line, aided by the advanced marker of their inward flank.

A line (B), *formed parallel or oblique* to the enemy (F), threatens and commences an echellon movement from its left; but on the arrival of the left at a favourable point of appui (C), the whole halt, and an
Fig. 69. echellon movement from the right (which has been ſtrengthened) takes place: the attack (D) having been given up, or having failed, the whole fall back in echellon F, on the left, which remains poſted, and

ſupported

ſupported with cannon.---From this ſituation, an oblique line (G), is taken to the left, and from the left by each adjutant marking his own right in the prolonged line: the regiments ſucceſſively again retire, and then break into column, the left in front, march behind each other, and commence this march, ſo that each at the ſame time enters the oblique line at its adjutant, prolongs it, and wheels up and forms.—This poſition (G) may be quitted, by throwing back the left of the line, retiring by alternate lines, or in ſuch other manner as the circumſtances of the moment may require.

S. 96. When the Line advances.

A line that is to advance, muſt be beforehand accurately formed and dreſſed, to enable it to move in a direction perpendicular to its front, otherwiſe a floating, opening out, or cloſing in of its parts, will take place, till ſuch perpendicular march is attained.

THE LINE WILL ADVANCE! | The LINE WILL ADVANCE (by a named ſquadron) is a caution.——The officer commanding ſuch ſquadron, quickly determines by his eye the exact perpendicular to the front of the line which he is to march upon,

upon, and till he is ſatisfied, the direction of it is juſt, he is not to look out for objects in it.---Every other ſquadron remains prepared.

Any perſon who means to indicate the direction of a line which is to be purſued (and the prolongation of which is not upon ſome ſtrong object) to another perſon, will do it in the moſt ready manner, by himſelf riding ſome ſmall diſtance forward in the intended direction, and deſiring the perſon who has remained at a given point to take ſuch line over his head, and of courſe to remark his points of marching in it.

MARCH! At the word MARCH! inſtantly repeated to each ſquadron, the whole move; each ſquadron by its center, and each ſquadron leader attentive to, and preſerving his ſpace, line, and diſtance, from his directing hand.—If the whole move uniformly and ſtraight forward, the line will be firm and ſteady.—If any inaccuracy ariſes, it muſt be inſtantly remedied by the inclining, moving up, or keeping back of particular ſquadrons, and ſuch neceſſary alterations muſt be made, by firm command and judicious execution, ſo as not to affect the general line.——The attention of commanding officers is extended to the general line, and they are to avoid partaking of the errors of any portion of it

it that is evidently in the wrong; but on the contrary, to conſider ſuch part as if deranged by ſome occaſional obſtacle, and to preſerve their own juſt relative poſition with reſpect to the directing ſquadron.

HALT! *If the line marches juſt*, it will halt juſtly, the whole at the ſame inſtant of the command HALT!—If this is not the caſe, the halt of ſquadrons muſt be to a degree ſucceſſive; at any rate the ſquadrons muſt halt in the general line.

All alterations of pace muſt be made in a firm and decided manner, and by the whole at the ſame inſtant, in conſequence of the order repeated by ſquadron leaders.

Inclining the line, is a very difficult but uſeful movement.—The ſame directions reſpect the whole line, that have been given for the ſingle ſquadron. (S. 10.) The leading flank officers of each muſt be very careful to calculate their relative diſtance from the ſtandard preceding them, and to preſerve the general paralleliſm of the line.—This is an operation to be required of the line when advancing; and its juſtneſs moſt particularly depends on the whole commencing its execution at the ſame inſtant; from circumſtances

of ſituation, it will generally be evident to which hand the incline will be required.

RIGHT, INCLINE! — At the word, RIGHT, INCLINE! rapidly repeated to each ſquadron --- The whole turn their horſes heads to the right, and incline at the pace ordered. (If the line is halted,) then the command to incline is a caution, and at the word MARCH! the whole move.

FRONT! — When the line has inclined about two hundred yards, the word FRONT! may be given. ---The whole return to the former direction, and conform as to intervals, and dreſſing, to the ſquadron of direction.--- When time has been given to adjuſt the line, the incline may be repeated as often as is neceſſary, to gain the ground wiſhed for to the flanks.--- The fronting every two hundred yards is preſcribed to prevent the breaking or falling into file of the line to which it would certainly be liable, if much greater ſpace was at once

once attempted to be inclined over.

As a certainty of direction to the following ſquadrons ---The angle of inclination will always be 34°, with reſpect to the former direction of the line.

With a front of nine or ten ſquadrons, the incline may be executed at a trot, but hardly at a gallop—With a greater front it will be very difficult to preſerve the line and diſtances of ſquadrons.—If the ground is at all embarraſſed, the line cannot incline, but muſt effect its change of ſituation by ſome of the other preſcribed modes.

CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT!

LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD!

FORWARD!

RIGHT WHEEL!

When the line is advancing--If circumſtances make it neceſſary, that a ſmall change ſhould be made in its direction towards either flank, a caution is circulated: CHANGE OF DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT!—The ſquadron of direction, by the word, LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD! gradually wheels to the right as much as is neceſſary to bring it perpendicular to its new points of march; the ſquadrons on the left of it, each WHEELS to

FORWARD! | the right, half as much as the ſquadron of direction has done, and move up ſucceſſively and briſkly into line with it: the ſquadrons on the right of it having all been ordered to HALT! when that of direction begun its change, again ſucceſſively move, when the new front of the line cuts the right of each reſpectively, they then by the LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD! and giving way to the right, conform to the new direction.

MARCH!

LEFT SHOULDER FORWARD!

FORWARD.

No change made in this manner ſhould exceed one thirty-ſecond part of the circle at one time; but after the line is ſettled in the new direction, another change, if neceſſary may be made.——In this operation, the pace of the ſquadron of direction cannot exceed a walk, otherwiſe much inaccuracy and hurry is to be apprehended. Such change will certainly be made with more preciſion from the HALT of the line, nor will time thereby be loſt; in this caſe, all the ſquadrons on the left would move up into line with the placed one of direction; thoſe on the right would remain halted, and on the advance of the formed part of the line, conform in the ſame manner as before to it.

If the line is to wheel to a flank, with an uniform front---The diſtances are preſerved from the ſtanding flank ſquadron which comes gradually about, and the pace is taken from the outward wheeling ſquadron.---The leaders of ſquadrons are therefore to give their attention to one another, and to thoſe objects of diſtance, pace, and line, ſo that at any inſtant of the wheel, the line might be halted, and would be dreſſed.

If the line is to wheel on a central point.---One wing would go about by three's. Each wing would make its wheel on that point as a flank one, the wing properly fronted, giving the line and pace to the other. When the whole was halted, the proper front would be taken by the faced wing.

In general, wheels of the line are beſt accompliſhed by changes of poſition made on a flank or central diviſion. (S. 71.)

A line at once makes front to its rear---By the wheeling or countermarch of each ſquadron—Or by the countermarch of the whole line. (S. 53.)

S. 97. *When the Line retires.*

The neceſſity of its being previouſly and correctly dreſſed, is full as eſſential as when it is to advance; if

that preliminary is not taken care of, its movements will be disordered in proportion to its extent.

THE LINE WILL RETIRE! — THE LINE WILL RETIRE, is a Caution---On which preparation is made in the same manner as on advancing; the officer who leads the directing squadron, immediately ascertains his point of march, and each squadron has an officer (not the commanding one) placed behind its center, ready to lead to the rear.

THREE'S ABOUT! — RANKS BY THREE'S RIGHT ABOUT!—MARCH! on which the ranks and ferrefiles wheel about, and the squadrons remain ready for the general word.

MARCH! — MARCH!—The line retires in the same manner as it advances, and the commanding officers of squadrons, being in the rear of the standards (each of his own) can by their eye and directions, give occasional aid.

HALT! — HALT!---Is the pause of a moment.

THREE'S

THREE'S ABOUT! MARCH! { RANKS BY THREE'S, RIGHT ABOUT! MARCH!

HALT! DRESS! { HALT! DRESS!—By the ſtandards.

If any farther dreſſing of the line is neceſſary, it is ordered by the commander as already directed.

The line is never to remain halted an inſtant after facing to the rear, but is immediately to march on.---And when it halts, it is immediately to FRONT, and then to DRESS.

When the regiment or line is marching either to front or rear, the partial obſtacles that preſent themſelves will be paſſed by the formation, march and deployment of the cloſe column.---Such parts as are not interrupted ſtill move on in front; ſuch parts as are interrupted, double by diviſions as ordered, behind an adjoining flank, or flanks, and in this manner follow in cloſe column in their natural order.—As the ground opens they ſucceſſively deploy and again perfect the line.—The columns are always behind the line and march cloſed up.—The formed part of the regiments, whether advancing or retiring, continues to move on at the ordinary pace, and in proportion as the obſtacles encreaſe or diminiſh will the formed, or column parts of the line encreaſe or diminiſh. Plate 12. Fig. 79.

In general the columns formed, will be of diviſions or ſubdiviſions of ſquadrons. The firſt that is obliged to double, will be directed to which hand by the commanding officer of the regiment; the others, as they ſucceſſively double, will in conſequence place themſelves behind it, and behind each other, and the hand firſt doubled to will be that which preſents the opening moſt favourable to the ſubſequent march and formation, and which the commanding officer will always hold in view, and order accordingly.---The interrupted body will double to one or both flanks according to circumſtances and orders. Obſtacles that impede a flank, will occaſion a ſingle column to be formed from the flank towards the center—Obſtacles that impede the center, or a central part of a body, will if conſiderable, occaſion two columns to be formed from the center towards the flanks.---The columns will follow a flank of ſuch part of the line as is not impeded; and either in doubling into column, or extending into line, the rear diviſions will conform to the movements of their then leading one.---No part leſs than the front of the column doubles or moves up, and when half or more of a regiment muſt be thrown into a column, it will be ordered by diviſions of ſquadrons.

When the obſtacle preſents a conſiderable front parallel to the line.—The part impeded will all at once be ordered to double behind ſuch one or two diviſions as clear them of the obſtacle.

When

When a point of an obſtacle is preſented to the line, and that it continues to encreaſe.—The doubling is then ſucceſſive, beginning with the diviſion that is firſt interrupted, and continuing as it becomes neceſſary, till the column can advance in clear ground.

When the obſtacle is paſſed, or diminiſhed, and that the line encreaſes.—If it is of ſuch a nature as to permit of the complete extenſion at once into line: the whole column performs it by the commands and deployments of the cloſe column on the front diviſion, which then makes part of the line.—But when the obſtacle diminiſhes by degrees only: then the diviſions of the column muſt come up into line ſucceſſively as the ground opens; and the remainder of the column muſt ſhift gradually towards the obſtacle, in the ſame manner that it before ſhifted from it in encreaſing.

The commanding officer of the regiment himſelf muſt, as much as poſſible, order the doubling of the diviſions, and their moving up into line; and particularly when any conſiderable part of the regiment is obliged to double into one column.——But if there are ſeveral doublings in the regiment at the ſame time, he can only direct the moſt conſiderable one, and the others muſt be ordered by their ſeveral leaders of ſquadrons.

Theſe movements are all made on parallel and perpendicular, not oblique lines; and the progreſs which the formed part of the line is conſtantly making, ſhows that no time muſt be loſt either in giving or executing

executing the words of command, and that the divisions of the column must be well dressed up, and its movements quick, firm but in perfect order.——The divisions of the column form successively into line as the obstacles permit them, or again double so as to conform to the shape of the ground, which must always be filled up.—The march of the uninterrupted part of the line must be steady and exact, and the openings made, must be carefully preserved from the center, while it continues to direct, or from whatever point does so, while the center is impeded: the columns depend on the formed parts of the regiment to which they are attached and are independent of each other.

Whether the regiment is advancing or retiring, the same operations take place, and the columns in both cases are behind the formed part of the line.—In retiring the rear rank leads.

When a line is advancing, it may also under certain circumstances pass such obstacles as present themselves, by ranks, by three's, or by file.—In such case, the interrupted division or divisions will be ordered to break to one or both flanks, *ranks by threes,* and closely to follow such parts of the line as are not broken: this will encrease as the obstacle encreases; but as it diminishes, the threes will successively and quickly move up to their proper place till the whole are again formed, and during this operation the leading threes will always remained attached to the flank of the part that is in line.—The same rules that direct the

doubling

doubling in column, direct the doubling *ranks by threes*, which may be applied to one or two ſquadrons; but if a longer front is interrupted, the doublings ſhould then be made by diviſions or ſubdiviſions.—Where the obſtacles are of ſmall extent, but frequently occurring, this mode of *ranks by threes* is the readieſt that can be applied in advancing: but in retiring it is leſs advantageous if the enemy are at hand to preſs upon the regiment; and therefore the paſſing by column is to be looked upon as the general method.

In plate 12, fig. 79—the poſition A. is a regiment and part of two others formed in line; they advance meeting with obſtacles—B. three diviſions of the left of the regiment have doubled—C. one diviſion of the right has alſo doubled—D. a central obſtacle now occurring, three diviſions of the right and one of the center, alſo two of the left and three of the center, have doubled—F. the whole diviſions have moved into line, except three of the left which are in column. —G. the three diviſions of the left remain in column, and two on the right, and three at the center have again doubled—H. the whole having arrived on open ground, have moved up into line, except one diviſion on the right.

If the regiment A. inſtead of advancing in front, is ſuppoſed to have faced to the right about, and to be retreating, the poſitions of the diviſions in column will be the ſame as above, they performing their movements with their rear ranks in front.

The

The positions I, K, L, M. show the passage of obstacles by the impeded parts filing, or marching *ranks by threes* round them.—At N. the line is again compleated—O, P. show the passage of a wood, by the filing, or ranks by two's, or ranks by threes of a squadron.---At Q. all obstacles are passed.——The situation of part of the adjoining regiments also appears during this march.

S. 98. *Checquered Retreat of the Line.*

All manœuvres of a corps retiring, are infinitely more difficult to be performed with order, than those in advancing.——They must be more or less accomplished by checquered movements: one body by its numbers, or position, facing and protecting the retreat of another; and if the enemy presses hard, the whole must probably front in time, and await him; as the ground narrows or favours, different parts of the corps must double; mouths of defiles and advantageous posts must be possessed; by degrees, the different bodies must diminish their front, and throw themselves into column of march, when it can be done with safety.

If a line with reſerves, finds it neceſſary to retire in face of an enemy; the alternate ſquadrons and reſerves will retire two or three hundred paces, and then front, ---The other ſquadrons will then retire, and when they join the firſt, the reſerves will again march, and front at like diſtances; the reſerves always leading the retreat. This will continue, till it is proper or ſafe to break into column of march, and the ſkirmiſhers of the whole will cover the front of the retiring line.

Two lines will generally make their retreat by paſſing alternately through each other—Or they may retire by the checquered movement of each line.

S. 99. *When the Line retires by alternate Squadrons, or Half Squadrons, in Two Lines.* Fig. 70.

—The line is told off by alternate, right and left ſquadrons or half ſquadrons, and one of direction for each line, (being two that are contiguous) are announced.—One diviſion of the line (the right's) is ordered to ſtand faſt, the left's go about by three's.—The retiring part marches a given diſtance, and when ordered, halts and fronts; this ſerves for a ſignal to the advanced part of the line to begin its retreat in the ſame manner, each body through its proper interval,

and

and when ordered, to halt and front.—The alternate retreat is thus continued either at a walk or a trot, till the line has attained ſome new ſituation, being covered by ſuch ſkirmiſhers or light troops, as were originally advanced in the front for that purpoſe, and who gradually fall back in proportion as the lines do.

In the courſe of the chequered retreat, a poſition oblique to the original one may be taken.---The diviſion of the line which is to retire, after facing to the rear, will march on to a given diſtance, and upon the outward ſquadron of one flank, make a change of poſition by the echellon march, and then front.---The other diviſion will retire in the ſame manner, till it arrives at the poſted one, it will there inſtantly commence its change of poſition, take its place in the intervals, and front in line.---From this ſituation, the parallel retreat may continue to be made, or a new oblique direction be again required.

S. 100. *Inverſion of the Line.*

Although, in general in formations, the inverſion of the line, or of its component parts, is and may be avoided, yet there are ſituations where this rule muſt be diſpenſed with.---The ſquadrons or line may be obliged to wheel by ranks or diviſions to the right about, the more readily to oppoſe a danger, inſtead of changing its

its poſition by a countermarch. It may be under the neceſſity of forming to a flank, its rear rank in front, —The column with its right in front, may arrive on the left of its ground, and be obliged immediately to form up, and ſupport that point, ſo that the right of the line will become the left. Part of a ſecond line may double round on the extremity of the firſt line, thereby to outflank an enemy. A corps moving to a flank by lines, may be obliged, in the quickeſt manner, to form up to the front of its march, ſo that the new lines ſhall be compoſed, each of parts of the old ones. But on the whole it is to be recollected, that though the inverſion of regiments in a line, and of ſquadrons in a regiment, ought to occaſion no real inconvenience, yet that of the diviſions of the ſquadron within itſelf, would lead to diſorder, and muſt be ſtudiouſly avoided.

Many other ſituations may be imagined, where oppoſing the rear rank admits of no choice, and where the inverſion of the diviſions of the line will gain much time, and becomes abſolutely neceſſary, when the formation is required from the point of appui, and near to an enemy. Troops muſt therefore be accuſtomed to ſuch operations, but the application of them requires great method and recollection, otherwiſe, in ſuch critical ſituations, confuſion is very eaſily produced, and will even be attended with the moſt fatal conſequences.

S. 101. *When, without the Help of advanced Objects, the Commander of a Line changes the Position of the Whole, or Part of it, to a Flank.*

In original formations of the line from column of march, preparatory points can always be given: *but in changes of the line, or parts of it,* from one poſition to another, more advantageous with reſpect to the enemy, and to making the attack, the new one muſt often depend on, and be taken up by the eye of the commander only, while the whole is in motion, and who will himſelf conduct the movement.

The change being determined on, the movement being neceſſarily a quick one, and the body that is to make it being apprized accordingly, the commander places himſelf at the flank which is to lead, and has five or ſix detached perſons with him, ready to take his orders.

The line breaks into column to the flank (of diviſions, ſub-diviſions, or ranks by three's, according as the ground allows; for in ſuch an operation, the column muſt ſet out on ſuch a front as it can maintain, till it again forms in line); on this occaſion, the pivots being lined, and the wheeling diſtances being true is moſt eſſential, and therefore if the diviſions can form column backwards, it ſhould be done.

The

The commander being before the pivot of the leading diviſion, puts the whole in motion, and conducts the head of the column, in ſuch manner as he finds proper towards the ground on which he propoſes to form a new line, and to the pace and path of which head, the reſt of the column muſt ſtrictly conform.

When he arrives near to where he propoſes his formation, with a glance of the eye, without ſtopping, and according to the enemy's ſituation, he determines the direction he is to give his line, and the point where he means to enter it.——Conducting his leading diviſion, ſo as by a circling movement of the *Shoulder forward*, to arrive with its pivot flank on the line on that point, he there halts a perſon to indicate the point of entry, (with his horſe's head to the flank of the column) and purſues the direction, which is only known to himſelf, and in which he will always find and take intermediate points.——From diſtance to diſtance he leaves perſons placed in the above manner in the line, for the direction of the column pivots, which they are to take care ſucceſſively to paſs cloſe to—He HALTS the column when he finds neceſſary—WHEELS up into line—Is ready to ADVANCE.—And ATTACK in line or echellon.

It is evident that the ſucceſs of this operation depends on the attention of officers, quickneſs of wheels, covering of pivots, and juſtneſs of diſtances, more eſpecially in moving along the line of formation.

In this manner may regimental commanders rapidly conduct regimental columns, from one poſition to another on which they are to form.

If inſtead of the prolongation in column, circumſtances of the moment ſhould require the line to be formed on the leading ſquadron, by *inverſion of the flanks*—The diviſions of the leading ſquadron, when all on the new direction, would be ordered to halt, and wheel up into line.——The other ſquadrons would ſucceſſively paſs on behind it, and behind each other, and each, as it was oppoſite to its ground, would wheel up its diviſions, move up, and halt in line. In this manner the ſquadrons within themſelves would not be inverted, although the regiments and the line itſelf would: and this is an operation that may be expected in ſituations where an enemy's flank is to be gained.

When a line is thus forming on its leading flank, it is in a ſituation, as ſoon as a few of its firſt ſquadrons have wheeled up (and if circumſtances require it) to attack in echellon from that flank; being ſupported by the other ſquadrons, which, as they arrive oppoſite their place in line, wheel up, and ſucceſſively move on behind each other (a named number forming each echellon) at a diſtance neceſſarily eſtabliſhed by this operation. Or when a ſufficient part of the line is formed, it will move on; the remainder of the column will form a ſecond line behind it, and the whole will attack.

S. 102. *Attack of Cavalry in Front and Flank.* Fig. 71.

The covering a flank in a line of cavalry, or having a body behind a flank, ready to turn that of the enemy, is of the greateſt conſequence, and their previous ſituation ſhould be concealed as much as poſſible.—That flank which is not to be employed in turning the enemy, cannot be ſo well ſecured as by two or three ſquadrons placed in echellon to the firſt line, about 100 paces from each other—With difficulty the enemy can turn this echellon, and it enables the other flank to act with more freedom. Theſe ſquadrons in echellon are kept refuſed, or brought up into line, according to circumſtances.

But behind the flank, deſtined to turn that of the enemy, ſeveral ſquadrons are to be placed, in open column of half ſquadrons; theſe, at the ordered moment, are to move up rapidly, and circle round each other, and the enemy's flank.——The whole body being in motion to the front; the forming up of theſe ſquadrons muſt begin when about four hundred yards from the enemy, and muſt be executed with the greateſt rapidity; the line moves on at a gentle trot to give time for this manœuvre, and does not attack till the enemy's flank is gained, when the whole CHARGE together; and finiſh by theſe ſquadrons (which ſhould be light cavalry, exerting their greateſt activity) being in a circling poſition round the flank and rear of the enemy.

When theſe half ſquadrons are in column behind a flank of the line——At the ordered moment each will half wheel to the flank, and by the *diagonal march* and *ſhoulder forward* will ſucceſſively attain their relative poſitions, taking care to conform to their leading half ſquadron, and to each other. The half ſquadrons will continue to preſerve a ſmall diſtance from each other, and not join, as they are thereby more active and manageable.

Fig. 72. *When theſe half ſquadrons are in column at quarter diſtance,* behind the flank of the line. At the ordered moment, the diviſions of the column will wheel to the flank ranks by three's; the head of the leading diviſion will take a new direction of the ſame degree, at which an incline is made, to this all the reſt will, as ſoon as poſſible, conform; and when they have opened about one hundred yards from the line, the leading half ſquadron will front, and move on a point taken fifty yards from the enemy's flank, the others continue their march rapidly by the flank, and paſſing each other, they ſucceſſively front and move on beyond each other, the whole being thus at firſt in an echellon to the rear, but which gradually changes to an echellon to the front, and at the finiſhing of the attack, the enemy's flank and rear is gained.

The laſt one or two ſquadrons of ſuch a column are always to be conſidered as the ſupporters of thoſe that attack, and are deſtined to counteract any movement made by the enemy's ſecond line, or reſerves, to take them in flank; they will form in a ſecond line, and half ſquadrons will front ſucceſſively as they arrive

arrive behind their relative bodies, and will follow at a due diſtance to ſupport.——It is evident, that the movements of the line itſelf muſt correſpond with, and give time to, the flank bodies, who have ſo much more ground to go over.

Whenever part of a body ſhall outflank an enemy, on arriving near him, ſuch part will rapidly circle inwards, ſo as to attack him in flank and rear, and the ſmalleſt body gaining a flank, and being well ſupported, is ſufficient to endanger a whole line.

This operation may be ſuppoſed to commence from column of march.—Two oppoſite columns of half ſquadrons arrive and halt in preſence of each other, and cloſe up to half or quarter diſtance. The enemy's column begins to form in line.—Two or three ſquadrons of the other column are deſtined to attack a flank: The reſt of that column forms quickly in line, on whatever diviſion appears moſt advantageous; and juſt before ſuch formation is completed, the flanking ſquadrons begin their operation, to which the advance of the line correſponds, and the whole attack at the moment the rear and flank of the enemy is gained.—If the flanking ſquadrons are at *the head of the column*, they are then in readineſs when required to take their oblique poſition, and till that begins, they partake of the movements made by thoſe immediately behind them, and preſerve their relative ſituation with reſpect to them, whether they are formed on, or whether they extend to either flank.—If the flanking ſquadrons are

in *the rear of the column*, they follow its movements, which brings them up to the front, and commence their peculiar operation, juſt before the formation of the line can be completed, and ſo as that no unneceſſary pauſe may take place.

In a charge of either infantry or cavalry, though a momentary diſorder may take place; yet the inſtant the enemy gives way, the line muſt be again formed, and the purſuit continued by light troops, or by detached troops or companies only.——Theſe follow the enemy with the utmoſt vigour, and as ſoon as the line is in order, it advances again and completes the defeat.

When cavalry attack infantry, they are too apt to break, but it ought always to be remembered, that when the enemy is diſperſed, they give up the purſuit to the ſecond line, which is ſupported by the firſt as ſoon as it regains its order. Light cavalry are, in general, placed in the ſecond line.

When cavalry attack cavalry, the ſquadrons muſt be firm and compact; but when they attack infantry, the files may be opened, and the men may bend down on their horſes necks.

When cavalry attack a battery, they muſt not ride up in front of it; but they muſt, in two diviſions, attack it on each flank, the files opened, and the men may bend on their horſes necks.

When

When cavalry attack infantry, they ſhould in general do it in column, and the ſquadrons of the column ſhould have at leaſt three times as much diſtance between them as the extent of their front.—The leading ſquadron, after breaking the enemy's line, ſhould move forward and form: the two ſucceeding ones ſhould each wheel outwards by half ſquadrons, and charge along the line; whatever other ſquadrons follow will ſupport and act according to circumſtances. If the enemy's line is conſiderable, the attacking cavalry forms ſeveral columns of three or four ſquadrons each, and charges on different points at the ſame time.

It may be expected, that under a ſevere fire both the cavalry and infantry loſe to a degree their regular order before they arrive on the enemy, but cavalry acting againſt cavalry can profit by its manœuvre and order till the very laſt moment; for till the horſes heads come up againſt each other, there is nothing that ought to prevent a cavalry ſoldier from being as ſteady in the ranks, as if he was at a common exerciſe.

There may be ſituations where a ſmall body of cavalry, ſuch as two or three ſquadrons, is to attack another nearly ſimilar body, and can depend on its ſuperiority of movement and agility.—For this purpoſe it may divide into ſmall bodies of fourteen or ſixteen file each, with intervals equal to their front, and the ſecond line, or reſerves, muſt cover thoſe intervals

at one hundred and fifty paces in the rear.—This enables to turn the enemy's flank rapidly, by having a more extended front, and ſeveral light and moveable bodies.—If there are three ſquadrons, the firſt line may be formed of ſix ſmall troops, and the ſecond of three, each of which latter will be ſubdivided into two; five of theſe cover the intervals, and the ſixth outflanks to right or left as may be ordered.—If there are only two ſquadrons, the firſt line is of four ſmall troops, the ſecond of two, which are again ſubdivided, three of them covering intervals and one out-flanking.

The ſecond line is not only uſed as a ſupport, but it may alſo ſometimes be brought up in part, on the flank of the firſt line, while advancing to the attack, in order ſuddenly to turn the enemy's flank.—If there are ſix troops in a firſt line covered by ſix ſmaller ones, two of theſe latter may be taken from one flank to turn that of the enemy: this leaves one interval uncovered, becauſe, if theſe two ſmall troops are taken from the flank on which the ſecond line does not out-flank, then this ſecond line covers to that hand one interval more, which changes the troop that before out-flanked into a covering troop——Sometimes the advantage to be gained by outflanking an enemy may appear ſo great, that half the ſecond line will be taken away for that purpoſe, being enabled to leave ſome intervals uncovered, in conſequence of the diſorder the enemy is thrown into by this manœuvre.

Sometimes

Sometimes the difficulty of retiring from a ſuperior enemy, who may have been met with unexpectedly, and who may be enabled to outflank, makes it neceſſary, where ſituation of ground favours, to endeavour to deceive him, and to form ſome of the diviſions into a rank entire, thereby to cover more ground; ſuch diviſions preſerve a file entire on each of their flanks, and take additional intervals in proportion to their numbers; the enemy, till he comes cloſe, cannot aſcertain the thinneſs of this diſpoſition, and may be induced to give up his idea of attacking; at any rate it is better to riſk the attack with this formation than to allow a flank to be turned, and in ſuch ſituation of neceſſity, even an attempt, if poſſible, ſhould be made on one of the enemy's flanks.

SECOND LINES.

No conſiderable body ſhould ever be aſſembled or formed for action, without a proportion of it being placed in *reſerve* or in *ſecond line*, and more or leſs ſtrong according to circumſtances.—The movements of ſuch ſecond line will always correſpond to thoſe of the firſt, and it will preſerve its paralleliſm and diſtance.—If the firſt line makes a flank or central change of poſition, the ſecond muſt make a change alſo

alſo on ſuch point as will bring it into its relative ſituation.

The march of the ſecond line in front, is regulated by its own ſquadron of direction, which moves relatively to that of the firſt line. In forming in line it will march on its own points, which are parallel to, and aſcertained in conſequence of thoſe of the firſt.

When the line breaks into columns to the front; the ſecond will generally follow thoſe of the firſt.—When the march is to the flanks, the ſecond line will compoſe a ſeparate column or columns. When the march is to the rear, the ſecond line will lead in columns.

The diſtance between lines, may be in general from one hundred and fifty to two hundred yards.

Second lines are ſeldom as ſtrong as the firſt; they are often divided into diſtinct bodies, covering parts of the firſt line, or are placed in columns behind it, in order, when required, to lengthen out or to ſupport the line.

Where ſeveral and ſupporting lines of attack are formed, the ſecond ſhould outflank the firſt, and the third the ſecond, &c. The advanced one being thereby ſtrengthened and ſupported on its outward wing.

The officer commanding the ſecond line muſt always be properly appriſed of the nature of any change to be

be made by the firſt, that he may readily determine his correſponding movements.

Whenever the firſt line breaks and manœuvres by its right to face to the left, or by its left to face to the right,—The movements of the ſecond line to conform to that of the firſt are free and unembarraſſed, and it may turn round the manœuvring flank of the firſt line, and take its new poſition behind it, by extending itſelf parallel to that direction, how oblique ſoever it may be.

The central movement generally required from the ſecond line to conform to that of the firſt, is equivalent to that line marching in two columns of diviſions, from near the center obliquely to the front, and from that ſituation forming to both flanks. (S. 80.)

In changes made by the movements of the open column; it requires much attention.—To conduct heads of regimental column, of both lines nearly parallel to their lateral ones, and perpendicularly, or diagonally, to front or rear according to the nature of the movement.—To determine with preciſion, and in due time, their points in the new line, that wavering and uncertainty of march may be avoided.---In great movements to allow the ſoldier every facility of motion, without encreaſing the diſtances of diviſions, and to require the moſt exact attention on entering the new line and forming.---To avoid obſtacles in the courſe of marching, but as ſoon as poſſible to re-enter the proper path of the column.

All

All changes of poſition of a firſt line are made according to one of the modes already preſcribed: in general, in critical ſituations, and where it can be done, they are made on a fixed flank or central point, and by the echellon march of half ſquadrons of the line.---But the movements of a ſecond being protected, more complicated, and embracing more ground, are made by the march of regimental columns regulated by a certain diviſion of the line.

In moſt caſes, and where great concert of movement is not required, a ſecond line may march in regimental columns, each from its flank neareſt to the new poſition, and relative points in it being prepared, each will march up and prolong the line.

All ſquadrons of a ſecond line muſt, at the completion of every change of poſition, find themſelves placed in the ſame relative ſituation with reſpect to the firſt line, as they were before the commencement of the movement.

In all caſes where a change of poſition is made on a flank or central point of the firſt line; the movement of its *covering point* of the ſecond line, determines the new relative ſituation of that ſecond line.

Fig. 73. 74. *To find this point*, it is neceſſary to premiſe---That if a circle is deſcribed from any point (A) of a firſt line (AE) with a radius equal to the diſtance betwixt the two lines; then its *covering* point (a) at that time

in the second line will be always in the circumference of that circle, at such place as the second line becomes a tangent to the circle.——Should the first line, therefore, make a change of position (A R) either on a flank or a central point (A); its *covering* point (a) will move so as still to preserve and halt in its relative situation (a, 2), and by the movement and halt of that point preceded by the one (d) of *intersection*, every other part of the second line, either by following them, or by yielding from them, is regulated and directed.——Betwixt the old and new situation of the covering point (a), and equidistant from each, lies the *point* (d) where the old and new positions of the second line *intersect*, and which is a most material one in the movement of that line.

S. 103. *When two Lines change Position on a central Point of the first Line.*

(A) is the point on which the change is made; (a) Fig. 74.
is obviously its covering point in the second line, whose distance in yards is known.——The direction of the first line (A R) being ascertained, it becomes immediately necessary to mark the *covering* point (a, 2) in the second line, and also the point of intersection (d), that the prolongation of that line may be also determined.---From the point (A), therefore, and in a direction

direction perpendicular to the new line, a perſon accurately takes the known diſtance between the two lines, and halts at (a, 2) and from thence by his eye obſerves the perpendicular to the line which he has juſt meaſured, and alſo its interſection with the ſecond line equidiſtant from (a, and a, 2) which gives the point (d), together with the direction of the new ſecond line.—The points (a, 2 and d) being thus fixed, the line proceeds to make their movement, viz. the firſt line by the echellon march (S. 90.); the ſecond line (B) breaks inward to the point (d), that diviſion moves its pivot flank along the new line, followed by all thoſe betwixt it and (a); till (a) arrives at the point (a, 2).---The other diviſions and regiments of the ſecond line move relatively to the part (a, d), the whole performing the preciſe operation already detailed in the change of poſition of the line on a moveable central point. (S. 80.)

Fig. 73. *But in order to accelerate* the movement of the ſecond line in central changes: a diviſion or flank point (o), as much beyond (a) as (a) is removed from (d) may be taken; this *rear point* is evidently the one which will reſt at the point of interſection (d), when (a) is arrived and halted at (a, 2.)--As ſoon, therefore, as the points (o, d) are aſcertained, and without waiting for the progreſſive movement of this center part of the line, every thing that is in the rear of (o) may march and form in the new poſition, regarding (o, 2) as its leading flank point; and every thing that faces to (d,) regarding (d, 2) as its leading flank point, will march and form upon it, in the new

line

line accordingly. (S. 80.)——If the firſt line points on any very diſtant object; the ſecond line (a, 2) will be readily judged to paſs a very little behind that object.

S. 104. *When two Lines change Position forward on a Flank of the firſt Line.*

The direction of the firſt line being aſcertained, Fig. 75. that line will march into it by the echellon march. (S. 90.) In the mean time the *covering flank point* (a, 2) in the new ſecond line having been taken, and alſo the *interſecting* point (d); theſe points ſerve as the baſe of formation.---The ſecond line will break into open column facing to the diviſion (d) of interſection; the whole will proceed as in (S. 80.) That diviſion marching along the new line till (a) arrives at (a, 2), and when the other regiments and ſquadrons that have moved forward are anew arranged in open column, they wheel up into line.

S. 105. *When two Lines change Position backward, on a Flank of the firſt Line.*

The direction of the firſt line being aſcertained, Fig. 76. that line will march into it by the echellon movement

to

to the rear. (S. 90)—The covering and interfecting points (a, 2) and (d), in the new fecond line ferving as a bafe of formation, having been afcertained as well as the point (o), that line breaks into open column, facing to the point of interfection: the part of the line between (a) and (o) marches on to the point of interfection, and from thence prolongs the new line: The part of the line behind (o) regarding (d) as its leading flank point of formation, will march and form upon it in the new line accordingly. (S. 80.)

S. 106. *When two formed Lines wheel into open Column, march to a Flank, change Direction, and take up a new Position.*

Fig. 77. *If the new pofition is a retired one.*—Both lines wheel into open column (fuppofe the left in front) and move on.—(C) is a point where the head of the firft line is to change its direction into that of (C D) by wheeling on its pivot flank: The leader of the fecond line being apprized of this point, fends forward to afcertain his correfponding point (c), and his parallel direction (c, d); thefe two points become the bafe of formation for the fecond line, and (d) is in the interfection of the old and new lines.——Both columns proceed in their firft direction, and when the firft line arrives

arrives at (C), the head wheels on its pivot into the direction (C, D), followed by the reſt of its column; but the ſecond line then changing its head on the point (C), moves towards it there to enter its correſponding direction.---The firſt line halts, and ſuch parts of it as are in the new direction remain ſo, while the rear of the column, by the movement of (S. 77) gains the new direction, and by wheeling up forms in line.———Or if the ground permits it, enters the new line by the echellon march, (S. 44) each diviſion firſt countermarching by files, and then facing about, ſo that its rear rank may lead.

When the firſt line halts; *if the head diviſion of the ſecond line has not entered the new direction*, it ſtill moves on to its point of entry, (c), prolongs the line till it arrives behind its correſponding point (A 2,) of the firſt line, it then halts, and alſo all ſuch others as have arrived in the new direction, while the rear of the column, which ſince the halt of the firſt line has been gradually (by obliquing) and regularly throwing itſelf to the left, places itſelf in open column on the new direction, and wheels up into line.

When the firſt line halts, *if the head of the ſecond has entered the direction*, it moves on till it arrives behind its correſponding point of the firſt one, and the rear of the column obliques, to avoid interfering with, and to make place for the forming of the firſt line.---When the head halts, ſuch part of the column as is not in the new direction, gains it by the movement of (S. 77.)

If the head of the firſt line, when it arrives at (c), waits till the ſecond line arrives at the correſponding point (c), they will then proceed equally---or the march of the ſecond line may begin proportionally ſooner than that of the firſt.

Fig. 78.

If the new poſition is an advanced one---The firſt line changes its direction at (C), by a wheel to the reverſe hand into (C, D), marches on till the head is halted; ſuch part of the column as is not in the new line, enters it by the diviſions of the column wheeling back into echellon, and then marching up ſucceſſively into line.-----The ſecond line, which has aſcertained its correſponding points (c, d), moves on, enters the new direction at (d), by a wheel to its reverſe hand, and prolongs the line till it arrives at its flank point, when the whole halt; and the regiments of ſuch part of the column as are not then in the new direction, gain it by the movements of (S. 77.)---The ſecond line muſt take care not to paſs its interſecting point (d), but after arriving at it, muſt wait till the head of the firſt line, which has more ground to go over, arrives equal with it in the new line; it will then move on.

S. 107. *Passage of Lines.*

A line of cavalry obliged to retire through a line of infantry, will, when arrived close to the infantry, front, and instantly march off each half squadron (from its right flank) ranks by two's, straight to the rear; wherever the heads of half squadrons present themselves, the infantry will make openings sufficient for four horses to pass through.---The heads of the half squadrons remain dressed, and preserve distances from the left.—When at a sufficient distance in the rear, the open column is formed (right in front) by the closing in and wheeling up of the two's. Pivots being then adjusted, the parallel line is formed by the wheeling up of the half squadron.

If instead of forming in parallel line, an oblique position with the left thrown back is to be taken; this must have been prepared, by bringing the heads of files, during the march to the rear, gradually into such direction.—And if the right is to be thrown back, then the half squadron must have marched by two's, from their left flank, instead of their right one.—*A retiring line* may also throw back a wing, by forming in line very soon after passing, and then taking an oblique position to the rear, by the echellon march, or some other of the modes already prescribed.

If squadrons are to pass through infantry in their front---When the line arrives close behind them, each

ſquadron will march from its center, ranks by two's, (eight men in front).—They will all paſs at the ſame inſtant through the openings which are made for them, and at the diſtance of thirty yards the heads will halt and dreſs, the ſquadrons will form, and the line move on.—If the line has attacked, and broken the enemy, and that ſmaller detachments than ſquadrons are to purſue, they will at the ordered inſtant march from a flank, ranks by two's, paſs the infantry, form up while in motion, and purſue with vigour.

Lines of cavalry exchanging ſituations may do it in the ſame manner as preſcribed in paſſing through infantry.—The ſecond line may either advance to the firſt, and halt, while the firſt paſſes through it; or the firſt retire towards the ſecond, halt, front, and then paſs——As there are intervals already eſtabliſhed between ſquadrons, the ſquadrons themſelves may be conſidered as ſo many obſtacles to a paſſing line; therefore, whatever part of ſuch paſſing line is oppoſite the intervals, may move through them; and whatever part of each ſquadron is interrupted, will follow its paſſing part by ranks of two's, behind each flank of it, and again move up into line, when they quit the intervals about twenty yards.

Reſerve ſquadrons.

When ſquadrons are ſtrong, and exceed forty-eight files, ſix or eight files of each may be occaſionally placed in reſerve, fifty paces behind their proper ſquadrons,

ſquadrons, and to whoſe movements they are attached and correſpond.—Their ordered ſituation may be behind either flank, or oppoſite an interval (in general the right interval) and they will be conſidered in the calculation of manœuvres of the line.---In general, they will act as a ſecond line, and when column of march is formed, they may make part of it, place themſelves in the interval, and follow the rear of their reſpective ſquadrons---They may be advantageouſly employed to flank, to ſkirmiſh, to purſue, or to form advanced or rear guards.

Flankers and ſkirmiſhers.

When flankers, ſkirmiſhers, or purſuers, are ordered out from the body of the ſquadron, they may in general be taken from one or both flank diviſions, and conſiſt of one or two complete ſubdiviſions, or one or two complete three's, thereby leaving every other part of the ſquadron entire; they will be commanded by appointed officers, move out at the inſtant of command, and proceed to perform thoſe duties in which every cavalry ſoldier of every kind muſt be individually inſtructed and practiced, and be maſter of the uſe of his fire arms and ſword, when ſingle, as well as in rank.

S. 108. *The Column of Route, or March.*

The column of march is the foundation of all diſtant movements, and even of evolutions and manœuvres.

---It is in that manner that the columns of an army ſhould perform their marches, that an enemy ſhould be approached, and that ſafety can be inſured to the troops in their tranſitions from one point to another.

Marches on what front generally made.

All marches, for any conſiderable diſtance, will at all times be made preferably, where the ground allows, in column of diviſions of the line, viz. by half ſquadrons, or diviſions, or ſub-diviſions, when the ſquadrons exceed forty files.---But where the breadth of the routes ſo require it, the march will be made by ſix men in front, (ranks by three's); four men in front, (ranks by two's); or finally, two men in front by the filing of ranks; this laſt is never to be done, but in caſes of abſolute neceſſity.

Diminiſhing or increaſing the front of the column.

All diminiſhing or increaſing the front of a column of march is in general done by each body of the column, at the point where the leading diviſion firſt does it; ſuch operation ſhould be performed with quickneſs and firmneſs, ſo as if poſſible not thereby to retard or open out the column.---At all points of increaſing or diminiſhing the front of the march, an intelligent officer, per regiment or brigade, ſhould be ſtationed to ſee that it is performed with celerity; and the commander of a conſiderable column ſhould have conſtant reports and inſpections made, that the column is moving with proper regularity; he ſhould have officers in advance to apprize him of difficulties to be avoided, or obſtacles to be paſſed, and ſhould himſelf apply every proper means to obviate ſuch as may occur in the march.---The great principle, on all occaſions, of diminiſhing or increaſing the front of

the

the column in march is—That ſuch part as doubles, or forms up, ſhall ſlacken or quicken its pace, as may be neceſſary to conform to the part which has no ſuch operation to perform, but which continues its uniform march without the leaſt alteration, as if no ſuch proceſs was going on; and if this is obſerved, diſtances can never be loſt, or the column lengthened out.

By doubling of pivot diviſions.

In marching by diviſions in open column, where diminiſhing the front one half or leſs becomes neceſſary, the pivot part always doubles behind the other part of the diviſion, and when it can again move up, it is ordered ſo to do.

By doubling of flank files.

In marches by diviſions in open column, where the whole can paſs through an opening, except a certain number of files; the center of the diviſion may be preſented to ſuch opening, paſs it in front, and the interrupted two or three files on each flank will follow by ranks by two's, and again move up when the obſtacle is paſſed.

When the column diminiſhes its front.

A line of cavalry will generally commence its march in column of four diviſions (of ſquadrons) and not diminiſh that front till the circumſtances of the route require it.—When it diminiſhes to a front of ſub-diviſions, or of ranks by three's, the column is not lengthened out, nor is any part of it obliged to halt, or to alter its pace, if ſuch operation is performed with preciſion; but when the diminution is to a front of ranks by two's, or by files, then a ſucceſſive halt muſt take place from front to rear of the column,

proportional to the ſpace it lengthens out, which muſt not be increaſed by ſlowneſs of execution, and is in part to be remedied by a temporary increaſe of pace in the front.

When the column increaſes its front.

When the column of ranks by two's, or by files, is to increaſe its front, being then in a ſituation of conſiderable extenſion, the leading ſquadron muſt be ordered to ſlacken its pace, and make occaſional halts, to allow for the operation, otherwiſe hurry and diſorder muſt take place, and the rear be harraſſed in endeavouring to gain their diſtances. When the rear is nearly up, the column can then reſume its ordinary rate of march. *When the column* of ranks by three's, by ſubdiviſions, or by diviſions, is to increaſe its front: As it is not then in a ſtate of extenſion, ſuch operation will be performed without any general alteration of pace, by the nimble and ſucceſſive moving up of its parts at the proper inſtant.

Situation of officers in marches of the column.

In all marches by half ſquadrons or diviſions, officers will lead their diviſions, obſerving their juſt diſtances; but they may alſo occaſionally be directed to move on the flanks. In all marches of the column by ſubdiviſions, ranks by threes's, ranks by two's, or by files; officers will be on the flank of their reſpective diviſions, attentive to the ſteadineſs of the march, to the riding of the men, that they do not diſtreſs their horſes, lengthen out the column, make improper ſtops, or otherwiſe act in an unſoldier-like manner. Officers muſt always attend to and correct the men of the diviſion before them, as well as their own.

The

The movement of a column of march ought, if poſſible, to be as ſmooth and equal as that of a column of manœuvre. The head of the column gives the pace at which the whole muſt move; no particular ſquadron or regiment is to perform any partial act whatever, that can poſſibly affect the reſt of the line; every alteration of movement and every increaſe or decreaſe of the front of the column comes from the leading ſquadron only, and muſt be attentively and gradually complied with at the proper inſtant, ſo as to ſhake and affect the rear of the column as little as poſſible. Attentions in column of march.

The moſt important exerciſe that troops can attend to is, the march in column of route. No calculations can be made on columns which do not move with an aſcertained regularity, and great fatigue ariſes to the ſoldier: a general cannot depend on execution, and therefore can make no combination of time and diſtance in the arrival of columns at their ſeveral points; in many ſituations, an improper extended column will be liable to be beat in detail, and before it can be formed. Troops that are ſeldom aſſembled for the manœuvres of war, can hardly feel the neceſſity of the modes in which a conſiderable body of cavalry muſt march and move. Importance of exactneſs in the march.

The diſtance of columns from each other during a march, depends on the circumſtances of ground, and the object of that march with regard to future formations. The more columns in which a conſiderable Columns and their diſtances.

able corps marches, the leſs extent in depth will it take up; the leſs frequent will be its halts, and the more ſpeedily can it form in order of battle to the front.

Combinations of march.

On the combinations of march, and on their execution by the component parts of the body, does the ſucceſs of every military operation or enterprize depend. To fulfil the intentions of the chief, every concurrent exertion of the ſubordinate officer is required, and the beſt calculated diſpoſition, founded on local knowledge, muſt fail, if there is a want of that punctuality of execution, which every general muſt truſt to, and has a right to expect from the leaders of his columns.

March of the column near an enemy.

Where a march is made near the enemy.—If to a flank, the object muſt be, that at no time, if poſſible, the extent in column may be greater than the extent required in line.—If to the front, or to the rear, then the object will be to march on a front of diviſions, or half ſquadrons, with their diſtances cloſed up one half or more, that they may the more quickly deploy into a line when required; therefore, in ſuch ſituations, if a column is obliged to diminiſh its front, from any obſtacle in the route, it will, in general, after paſſing it, be ordered again to increaſe it, that it may be the better prepared for the great object of the march.

But where the perfect ſafety of the march is undoubted, and that the column has been obliged to diminiſh its front to ranks by two's, or by files, it will remain in ſuch order, till there is a proſpect that it can double up, without being again liable to be reduced; for

for the frequent repetition of these operations in a long march, unavoidably increases the fatigue of the column, especially to the rear part of it, at a time when it is so material to avoid it.

On a march, and where the routes are indifferent, it is not easy to prevent partial and occasional stops in the divisions of the column; these, as well as their subsequent movement, will be successive, and as a lengthening out is the necessary consequence of all successive movements, they must stop sufficiently closed up to each other to allow for this circumstance, and for their retaking their just distance, when again put in motion: and to this officers must pay great attention, that the column may not be improperly extended.

Occasional stops in the column.

On a march, there are so many occasional and temporary halts, that individual soldiers should at no other time be allowed to stop or dismount—and when any of them are so permitted, it must be then evident, that the unavoidable halt will allow of this being done without affecting the march of the column——No man must be permitted to ride in a careless lounging manner, which tends to fatigue and ruin the horse.—No one is to stop under pretence of watering his horse, much less is any division of the column to do so.—At a general halt every necessary examination and adjustment of saddles, girths, &c. should be made.

Attentions of officers on the march.

Regiments

Attention of commanding officers in column of march.

Regiments are not ſolely to depend on the one immediately before them for alteration of pace, or for the diminution or increaſe of the front of the column. If there is reaſon to think that it has not originated from the front, they are to ſtop the miſtake, and not continue it.——The look out of each commanding officer muſt be as forward as poſſible, at the ſame time that he is to recollect, in the execution of any of the operations of the column, how he can aid in moderating the difficulties and fatigue that always go on increaſing to thoſe behind him.

Change of direction.

The neceſſary changes in the direction of the route are gradually made by the diviſions of the column, as on a moveable pivot, and not by quick and ſquare wheels, unleſs the diviſions are confined on each flank, and thereby obliged to make fixed wheels to prevent the loſs of intervals.

Correction of diſtances.

If any ſmall diſtance is to be gained or corrected, it muſt be done gradually, by a whole diviſion at once, and by word of command, not man by man, hurrying up ſingly, as troopers are too apt to do, without reflecting that ſuch conduct makes a ſucceſſion of falſe intervals ſomewhere elſe, which is equally material to the march of the column, and tends to throw the whole into diſorder.

Quick movement of the column.

The march of a column of cavalry, combined with that of infantry and the horſes carrying their baggage, forage,

forage, &c. is commonly made at a walk—Should a trot, or a quicker movement for a conſiderable diſtance, be required from ſuch a body in ground that is rough, unfavourable, and not perfectly uniform, it will demand the greateſt circumſpection in the leaders of ſquadrons and regiments ſo to conduct their ſeveral bodies as not to open out the column too much, nor to hurry nor harraſs thoſe in the rear; they muſt endeavour as much as poſſible to move each at a ſteady pace, and gradually to regain ſuch diſtances as each may unavoidably loſe, for this is a thing that muſt happen; on ſuch occaſion, ſome ſmall increaſe of diſtances between ſquadrons may be permitted, that ſudden ſtops may be foreſeen, and their effects moderated: by ſuch attentions, the horſes will be much relieved, and whatever extenſion is thereby occaſioned, will be immediately corrected, when the head of the column changes its pace to a walk, or arrives at the point where it is to halt or form.

On a march, ſervants, led horſes, and canteen horſes, remain with their ſquadrons.——The ſituation and movements of carriages belonging to the column is preſcribed in orders.——The place of the bat horſes is always aſcertained for them, in the order in which their regiments follow each other: they are never to march in the diviſions of the troops, but in front or rear of the whole column, according to circumſtances and as ſhall be directed; a ſufficient guard is to be with thoſe of each regiment, and great care taken that they do not fall behind, ſtraggle, or extend the column.— Baggage.

column.—It is seldom that the bat-horses can be ordered to march on the flank of the column: it ought only to be in ground where there is a certainty that no defile can occur, for in such case, they cannot be permitted to enter into the column, but must stop till the troops have passed, and follow in the rear.—When they do move on a flank, it is always on that flank which is not next the enemy.

Cavalry Regulations.

THESE REGULATIONS comprehend the circumstances most essential for the movements of a line or large body of cavalry, and from them ought to be deduced and arise the more minute and detailed rules for the instruction of individuals, and of small bodies.

Infantry Regulations.

THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES for the formation and movements of cavalry and infantry being invariably the same, their fuller and more particular explanation in several points is to be found in the REGULATIONS FOR THE INFANTRY, which, by His Majesty's command have been lately published, and are ordered to be observed: an attentive perusal of them is therefore essentially necessary to every cavalry officer.

EVOLU-

EVOLUTIONS.

WHAT are generally called the evolutions, or the doublings, breakings and diminution of the front of the ſquadrons, to enable them to move with facility in all ſituations, are the ſame, and common to all denominations of cavalry.

Evolutions of the Squadron.

The ſquadron is formed at cloſe order, and dreſſed to the right.

Officers, quarter maſters, and trumpets, are at their poſts in ſquadron: farriers are ſent to the rear.

The words of command are given by the leaders of ſquadrons.

REAR RANK, TAKE ORDER! } A caution.

MARCH! { The rear rank reins back by the right to its proper diſtance, and ſquadron officers, &c. remain in the ſame ſituation as at cloſe order, except the whole of the ferrefile rank, which

which reins back to the diſtance of order; and the whole of it cloſe to its own right, that it may not interfere with the regularity and appearance of the doubling and forming of the ranks.

HALF RANKS, TO THE RIGHT DOUBLE! — A caution.

MARCH! — The left half rank reins back the half diſtance of the ranks—makes a pauſe of an inſtant, and then by ſignal paſſes to the right, till it covers the ſtanding half rank.---The ſtandard remains with the ſtanding half rank of the front. The ſerrefile rank remains cloſed to the right.

DIVISIONS OF RANKS, TO THE RIGHT DOUBLE! — A caution.

MARCH! — The left diviſions of ranks rein back, half the diſtance, pauſe, paſs, and cover the ſtanding ones. The ſtandard reins back.—The ſerrefiles remain as above.

SUB-

SUBDIVISIONS OF RANKS, TO THE RIGHT DOUBLE! } A caution.

MARCH! { The left ſubdiviſions of ranks rein back, pauſe, paſs, and cover the ſtanding ones.—Standard remains—a proportion of ferrefiles double behind their right.

FORM QUARTER RANKS! A caution.

MARCH! { The left ſubdiviſions of ranks that doubled, paſs to the left till uncovered, pauſe, and then move up by the right, and by ſignal.——Serrefiles that doubled, alſo move up.

FORM HALF RANKS! A caution.

MARCH! { The diviſions of ranks that doubled, paſs to the left, pauſe, move up by the right, and by ſignal.

FORM SQUADRON! A caution.

MARCH! { The half ranks that doubled, paſs to the left, pauſe, and move up by the right, and by ſignal.

Theſe doublings of ranks are performed by reining back, and paſſaging; and the formings are performed

by paſſaging and moving up. They are evolutions of exerciſe only, and calculated to ſhew the riding of man and horſe.

Should they at any time be required to be performed while the ſquadron is in motion, the ranks will both double and move up by a ſharp incline.

In the following half rank wheeling (which is here mentioned, in order to be occaſionally practiſed) it is to be obſerved, that the ranks muſt be at a greater diſtance than order from each other, and at leaſt equal to the front of the half rank. Should more than one ſquadron be ſtanding in line, their intervals muſt be equal to the front of ſquadrons, for the performance of this evolution together.

HALF RANKS WHEEL ABOUT, OUTWARDS! — A caution.

MARCH! — The half ranks wheel about outwards on their proper flank men. The ſtandard wheels with the right half rank—the commanding officer turns on his own ground—quarter maſters, trumpets, and rear officers ſhift to the flank, ſo as to remain in front of their reſpective half ranks.

HALT! —The half ranks halt, when the wheel of the half circle is completed, and eyes remain turned to the wheeling hand.

HALF

HALF RANKS WHEEL ABOUT, INWARDS! } A CAUTION.

MARCH! HALT! } The half ranks wheel about, halt, and dreſs to the center. They muſt take care to finiſh the wheel together.

It may be obſerved that ſeveral ſquadrons in line with any interval that is directed, by taking diſtance of ranks equal to a half rank, may wheel all their half ranks at once any ordered portion of the circle; but the whole muſt wheel to the ſame hand, as in the ſquadron wheelings.

The Squadron halted, and ranks at close Order.

RANKS BY THREE'S! RIGHT WHEEL! MARCH! HALT! DRESS! } As in Section 16, 23: but the following correction is to be made to S. 16. and is always to take place, viz.— In wheeling to right or left ranks by three's: the ſtandard and its coverer, inſtead of placing themſelves betwixt the two center ranks of ſixes as formerly ordered, are to place themſelves in the middle of thoſe two ranks, according to the hand wheeled to; ſo that ſuch two ranks will conſiſt of ſeven men inſtead of ſix.—

The ſame will alſo take place in wheeling ranks by two's, for thereby the ſquadron will be leſs extended.

MARCH! — The ſquadron moves at whatever pace, and to whatever diſtance is neceſſary, preſerving an exact alignement, and all eyes turned to the proper front, the left.

HALT! — By the left.

THREE'S—WHEEL UP! — A caution.

MARCH! — Cloſing as much as neceſſary to the right.

HALT! DRESS! — Eyes to the right.

The ſame movement of ranks by three's takes place to the left, which returns the ſquadron to its former ground.

RANKS BY THREE'S—RIGHT ABOUT WHEEL! — A caution.

MARCH! — The ſtandard, flank officers, and their coverers, turn ſingly on their own ground while the others are wheeling about.

HALT! DRESS! — By the ſtandard.

MARCH! — To the rear, as far as proper.

HALT! — On former ground.

Theſe

Theſe wheelings of ranks by three's are performed by each rank ſeparately and independently.

SUBDIVISIONS, RIGHT WHEEL!	A caution.
MARCH!	The ſubdiviſions wheel to the right on their reſpective flanks. The rear ranks are well cloſed up to the front ranks—Officers, ſtandard, &c. as in Section 16.
HALT, DRESS!	To the proper front, and a leader on the flank of each.
MARCH!	In the alignment as ordered.
HALT!	
SUBDIVISIONS WHEEL UP!	A caution.
MARCH!	
HALT, DRESS!	To the right, and then to the ſtandards when ordered.

The ſame movement of ſubdiviſions takes place to the left, and returns the ſquadron to its former ground.

COLUMN OF SUBDIVISION FROM THE LEFT MOVE OFF TO THE REAR. — A caution.

MARCH!
HALT, DRESS!
MARCH!
LEFT WHEEL!
HALT, DRESS!
MARCH! — The subdivisions wheel to the left, and at the second word, March, the leading one again wheels to the left. The other subdivisions move on, and again separately wheel to the left as they cover and follow in open column the leading subdivision of the column, which advances at such pace as is ordered.

ON THE LEADING SUBDIVISION, TO THE REAR, FORM SQUADRON. — The leading subdivision by order wheels to the left about and halts. The others wheel round the leading one, and successively join on its right. (S. 50.)

SUBDIVISIONS FROM THE RIGHT, MARCH IN COLUMN TO THE FRONT. — A caution.

The

MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!
MARCH!
LEFT WHEEL!
HALT, DRESS!
MARCH!

The right ſubdiviſion ſtands faſt: The others wheel to the right; inſtantly move on, and again wheel to the left, when they cover the leading one, which marches forward, and clears the ground as ſoon as the ſecond one arrives on its flank in order to wheel.

HALT!

The whole, when its head is arrived at its former ground.

TO THE FRONT FORM SQUADRON.

A caution.

MARCH!

The following ſubdiviſions incline briſkly to the left, and form up to the leading one; which is halted.

The ſubdiviſions are here ſuppoſed of ſix files each at leaſt, otherwiſe an extenſion of the column muſt take place.

FORM OPEN COLUMN OF DIVISIONS BEHIND THE RIGHT.

A caution.

DIVISIONS, RIGHT WHEEL! &c. &c.

As in Section (36.)—The right diviſion ſtanding faſt, and the others proceeding to cover it in open column.

FORM SQUADRON ON THE RIGHT DIVISION BY THE OBLIQUE MARCH! — A caution.

DIVISIONS ON THE RIGHT — BACK, HALF WHEEL, &c. &c. — The right diviſion ſtands faſt, the others form up to it, as in (S. 44. 71.)

Diviſions alſo march off in column, to flanks, rear, and front, in the ſame manner as ſubdiviſions.

FROM (RIGHT OR LEFT) OF HALF SQUADRONS TO THE FRONT FILE. — A caution.

MARCH! — The leaders of the rear rank move up to the front rank leaders, and both ranks file to the front from the named flanks, the ſtandard leading one of them; the rear rank is the breadth of a horſe diſtant from and dreſſed to its front rank—Quarter-maſters, &c. follow the files.—Leaders dreſs, and preſerve diſtances from the right, if filed from the left, and vice verſa—Commanding officer is with the ſtandard half ſquadron.

When

HALT! When ſufficiently advanced.

TO THE FRONT FORM SQUADRON. A caution immediately given.

MARCH! The rear rank leaders cover the front rank leaders, who, with the ſtandard, halt and are in a line.---Each rank forms up at the ſame time, file after file, to its proper leader, and looks to its formed flank; when the whole are up, the ſquadron will receive the word Center Dreſs! and correct any inaccuracy that may exiſt.

FROM (RIGHT OR LEFT) FLANKS OF HALF SQUADRONS TO THE REAR FILE! A caution—when one of the half ſquadrons diſengages by reining back.

MARCH! The leaders turn to the rear, and the front rank leaders move up to the rear rank ones, the ſtandard in front of its proper half ſquadron.---Quarter-maſters and trumpets follow their reſpective half ſquadrons.---Leaders dreſs and preſerve diſtance from the right if filed

filed from the left, and vice verſa.---The commanding officer in the rear of the ſtandard half ſquadron.

HALT! — When a conſiderable way beyond the original ground.

TO THE REAR FORM SQUADRON! — A caution.

MARCH! — The front rank leaders double round the rear rank leaders; place themſelves before them, and together with the ſtandard halt.—Both ranks follow their leaders and form up at the ſame time; when the whole are up, the ſquadron will receive the word CENTER DRESS, and correct any inaccuracy that may exiſt.

One very great advantage ariſes in the filing of half ſquadrons from the *ſame* flank, for in any ſituation the whole body may be halted and inſtantly converted into an open column, ready to wheel up into line, or to execute any of the movements or formations of the open or cloſe column.---This is not the caſe if the filing is made from the right and left of ſquadrons either to front or rear.

FROM

FROM CENTER OF SQUADRONS TO THE FRONT, FILE! — A caution.

MARCH! — The ſtandard, its coverer, and the four center files advance in front—The reſt of the ſquadron follow in file, till the whole is in four files. The commanding officer leads ---The quarter maſter, &c. are in the rear.----Dreſſing and diſtances are taken from the ſtandards by the firſt four men. The followers of the files attend to their leaders, at the ſame time that each four may be dreſſed to the right. The double files are ſeparated a horſe's breadth, if they cover their leaders.

HALT! — When the head arrives at the original ground.

TO THE FRONT FORM SQUADRON! — A caution.

MARCH! — The ſtandard and files on each ſide of it ſtand faſt. The reſt of the ſquadron move up to their places, file by file, and dreſs to the ſtandard.

SQUADRONS,

SQUADRONS, TO THE RIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!——HALT!

SQUADRONS—RIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!——HALT!

SQUADRONS—RIGHT ABOUT WHEEL!
MARCH!——HALT!

SQUADRONS—LEFT WHEEL!
MARCH!——HALT!

SQUADRONS—LEFT WHEEL!
MARCH!——HALT!

SQUADRONS—LEFT ABOUT WHEEL!
MARCH!——HALT!

} Wheelings in Squadron.

SQUADRON—MARCH!
RIGHT—INCLINE!
FORWARD!

LEFT—INCLINE!
FORWARD!

} The inclinings of the ſquadron are performed on the move.

RETIRE, RANKS BY THREES.
HALT, AND FRONT.

} Which may bring the ſquadron nearly on its original ground.

Theſe evolutions are performed partly from the halt, and partly from the march of the ſquadron.---Their arrangement may be varied to adapt them to ground or circumſtances.

On

On the ſame principles, can all other doublings or wheelings of the different tellings off of the ſquadron be made as ordered; and other filings, double or ſingle, may alſo be applied where neceſſary. As from the center of a regiment; from the flanks of diviſions or ranks of any kind to front or rear, &c. but thoſe above preſcribed ſeem ſufficient for every eſſential purpoſe.

In the detail of theſe evolutions, the connecting words of March! Halt! &c. muſt be ſubſtituted according to the ſituation of the ſquadron.

The evolutions of two, three, or more ſquadrons, as a regiment, are the combination of thoſe of the ſingle ſquadron. The general commands are given by the chief of the whole; thoſe of execution are repeated by leaders of ſquadrons.

The filings, wheelings, inclinings, and formings up, are performed at a quick pace; and the general movements of the line are made according to the orders that are given.

WHEN THE REGIMENT DISMOUNTS, AND FORMS IN BATTALION, IT IS COMPOSED OF

Two wings	— Half regiments.
Four grand diviſions	— Squadrons.
Eight troops	— Half ſquadrons.
Sixteen diviſions	— Quarter ſquadrons.
Thirty-two ſubdiviſions	— Eighths of ſquadrons.

The

The *tellings off* of the regiment or ſquadron, whether mounted or diſmounted, are therefore the ſame, and proportional diviſions take place whether 2, 3, or 4 ſquadrons compoſe the regiment.

The 4 officers on the right of ſquadrons, remain there to command troops or half ſquadrons.

The 4 officers on the left of ſquadrons, ſhift and replace the 4 ſerjeants on the right of each left half ſquadron, and command thoſe half ſquadrons.

The captains that command ſquadrons will be of the number of the 8 officers that are on the right of troops, and therefore replace ſome of the ſquadron flank officers who are otherwiſe diſpoſed of.

One officer, covered by a ſerjeant or corporal, is on the left of each half battalion.

The ſerjeants who are on the right of diviſions of each half ſquadron, and are not hereby diſplaced, remain in their ſituation, and thus there is either an officer or ſerjeant on the right of each diviſion.

The 4 ſtandards are in the center of the regiment, 2 in each rank, and their 4 coverers are immediately behind them in one rank---Betwixt the ſtandards of the front rank, is a directing ſerjeant (who need not be covered) to regulate the march of the battalion. From the poſitions above preſcribed, there is an officer on each flank of the ſtandards.

The field officers, mounted, are in the rear of the battalion, and the commanding officer behind the center.

The

The officers and ſerjeants in the front rank of the battalion, are covered by their proper non-commiſſioned officers as when mounted.

All the other officers and ſupernumerary ſerjeants are in the ſerrefile rank behind the battalion, and when the battalion breaks into open column of diviſions or ſubdiviſions, one of theſe officers or ſerjeants places himſelf on the flank of, and conducts each of ſuch diviſions, as is not naturally provided with a leader from the front.

In every reſpect therefore, the poſition of officers, non-commiſſioned officers and men, and the movements of the regiment when diſmounted, are regulated and determined by the principles and commands preſcribed for the regiments of infantry.

When the Regiment is to diſmount, and form in Battalion.

It is preſumed, that officers who are to be on the right of troops, on the flanks of the half battalions, and ſupernumerary in the rear, and alſo the ſerjeants who have to ſhift their places, are apprized of it.

CLOSE TO THE CENTER OF THE LINE TO DISMOUNT! } Is a caution.

Each

THREE's---INWARDS WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT, DRESS!
MARCH!
HALT!
THREE's, WHEEL UP!
MARCH!
HALT, DRESS!

Each ſquadron wheels inwards, ranks by three's. Each halts, when at the diſtance of 2 horſes length from the one preceding it.——The whole wheel up into line, ſquadrons at files cloſed, boot-top to boot-top. The whole are dreſſed to the center of the regiment to which they cloſed in. The commanding officer remains advanced in front of the center---commanders of ſquadrons are on the flank of their front ranks. Quarter-maſters and ſupernumeraries of the rear, cloſe in to behind the center of their ſeveral ſquadrons, the trumpets on the right, and the farriers on the left of this rank.

EYES TO THE RIGHT!

The whole.

PREPARE TO DISMOUNT!

Rear rank reins back.—Files rein back clear of the ſtanding rank. Gloves are taken off. Carbines ſprung, and unſtrapped. Collars undone. Reins are ſhortened, and by ſignal carbines are placed behind on the near ſide.

The

DISMOUNT! — The regiment, by ſignals given ſharply and without loſs of time, diſmount, lock ſwords, and ſtand faſt at horſes heads.

LINK HORSES! — The horſes that doubled are brought up into their ranks, and link to the center under the bridle reins.—The men fall back two paces, and face their horſes.---All officers link at their poſts in ſquadron, and then draw their ſwords.—Quarter-maſters, farriers, and one file per diviſion of the ſquadron, remain with the horſes—Trumpeters and muſic run up, and form in two ranks behind the center interval.

FORM SQUADRONS! — The front rank faces to the right about, and the rear rank of each ſquadron faces outwards from the center.

MARCH! — The front ranks march forward thirty ſteps, each ſquadron cloſing to its own centre, and then receive the word

HALT! — *Halt!*---The rear ranks file

quick from each flank, through the intervals of the horſes, double round, and form cloſe to the front rank, as well as the ſerrefiles from the rear.—— Trumpeters and muſic are behind the center interval.

OFFICERS TAKE YOUR POSTS IN BATTALION! MARCH!

The officers move quickly to their poſts in battalion, and are placed as already mentioned---One on the right of each troop, one on the left of each wing, each of theſe covered by a non-commiſſioned officer in the rear rank, and the reſt, as unappropriated, remain ſupernumerary behind the ſquadron.—The commanding officer is ſtill in the front, and the other mounted field officers in the rear.

FORM BATTALION!

A Caution.

SUBDIVISIONS WHEEL INWARDS! MARCH! HALT, DRESS!

The ſquadrons wheel backwards by ſubdiviſions, facing to the centre of the regiment, and receive the word Halt, Dreſs! from their ſeveral leaders.

The

MARCH! { The whole on an alignement.

HALT! { The two center ſquadrons when they arrive at wheeling up diſtance from each other, and reſerving the breadth of three files for the ſtandards, and intermediate ſerjeants.——The other ſquadrons when they have cloſed up to wheeling diſtance from the one preceding.

WHEELINTOLINE! MARCH! HALT, DRESS! EYES---RIGHT! { The battalion is formed.---The ſtandards move quickly by the rear, to occupy their place in the center.---The ſerreſiles divide themſelves in the rear, and other individuals are placed, as directed for the battalion in the Infantry Regulations.

In this manner the battalion forms to its center, or to either flank, as directed, and whether it is compoſed of two, three, or four ſquadrons.

SHOULDER CARBINES!
FIX BAYONETS!

The battalion remains ready to march forward.

WHEN THE REGIMENT IS TO MOUNT.

The regiment being formed in front of their horſes in order to mount.

RIGHT ABOUT, FACE!
QUICK MARCH!
HALT, FRONT! — When about 50 yards from the horſes.

SUBDIVISIONS FROM THE CENTER OUTWARDS WHEEL!
MARCH! — The ſubdiviſions wheel backwards, and front outwards from the center of the regiment.
HALT, DRESS! — Standards and officers move quick, and join their reſpective ſquadrons.

QUICK MARCH!
HALT, FRONT! — Each ſquadron by its leader is halted and fronted, when oppoſite the center of its horſes.

SPRING CARBINES!

RIGHT ABOUT FACE! — A caution.

The

MARCH! — The line again retires, each ſquadron by its center, and the whole by the right ſquadron, to within 30 yards of the horſes.

FILE TO YOUR HORSES! — The rear rank files quickly off from each flank, and the front rank marches on, opening their files, and halt within two paces of the horſes.

UNLINK HORSES! — The men move up to their horſes, and unlink, doubling up the collar rein in the left hand, and holding the bridoon rein in each hand, cloſe to the horſe's head.

PREPARE TO MOUNT! — Files rein back; let down ſwords; ſhorten reins; ſeize the mane; twiſt it round the left thumb, and take the ſtirrup with the right hand.

MOUNT! — On the word.

FILES THAT DOUBLED —MARCH! — The doubled files move up.

REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER! MARCH! — The front rank at the ſame time attending to its dreſſing.

SIT AT EASE! Immediately faſten links, &c. &c.

SQUADRONS CENTER DRESS! Each ſquadron quickly adjuſts itſelf by its own center.

REGIMENT, RIGHT DRESS! Markers advance a few yards from each ſquadron, line well, and the regiment dreſſes up to them.

The regiment is prepared to take its intervals, or whatever other ſituation is ordered.

INSPECTION, OR REVIEW OF A REGIMENT OF CAVALRY.

The regiment marches to its ground in open column of ſuch front as circumſtances allow of. Forms on the alignement in cloſe order, with intervals equal to one third of the ſquadron. Every individual is at his poſt in ſquadron, and alſo acquainted with his poſt in battalion, when the regiment diſmounts. The regiment takes open order in the manner directed. The trumpets aſſemble on the right of the regiment in two ranks; and the ſtaff, &c. of chaplain, ſurgeon, mate, adjutant, are on the right of the trumpets in the line of front rank, one horſe's length from it; and half a horſe from each other.

In

In this diſpoſition, and eyes to the right, the general is awaited.—He is to be received with the compliments due to his rank, as ſet forth in the regulation of military honours. On this occaſion the ſenior officers are at the head of ſquadrons, and the commanding officer of the regiment is one horſe's length before the center of the whole.

A point is to be originally marked, about 150 yards in front of the center of the regiment, where the general is ſuppoſed to take his ſtation: But although he may chuſe to quit that poſition, ſtill that ſpot is to be conſidered as the point to work upon, and to which all movements and formations are relative.

Receiving the General.

DRAW SWORDS!

When the reviewing general preſents himſelf before the center, or before any other part of the regiment (or line) the whole DRAW SWORDS, at three motions, the officers coming down at the laſt motion to the poſition of the ſalute, in which ſituation they make a ſufficient pauſe, and then recover with the commanding officer. During this operation the whole of the trumpets ſound, according to

the rank of the general, and ſtandards only ſalute ſuch perſons, as from rank and regulation, are entitled to that honour.

The general then goes towards the right (accompanied by the commanding officer) and the whole remain ſteady, without paying any farther compliment while he paſſes along the regiment, during which time muſic will play or trumpets ſound, and they will ceaſe when the general has returned to the right flank of the regiment, and is going away from it.

EYES—LEFT! — When the general turns the left of the left ſquadron, and paſſes betwixt the ranks, that ſquadron turns eyes to the left, as does each of the others, as he approaches them.

EYES RIGHT! SLOPE SWORDS! — When the general is going from the regiment, each ſquadron dreſſes to the right, and ſlopes ſwords.

REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER! MARCH! — While the general is proceeding to place himſelf in the front, this command will be given, and the regiment prepare to march paſt. On this particular occaſion the officers will

will be cautioned not to alter their ſituations, but to remain as at ORDER.

Marching Paſt.

THREE'S—RIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The general having taken his poſition, the regiment is ordered to wheel to the right, ranks by three's: All the officers, &c. face to the right, and each is in the line of a rank of ſixes.—Trumpeters wheel into one rank, and the ſtaff of ſurgeon, chaplain, &c. do not march paſt.

MARCH!

To the flank and in the continuation of the former front, which is marked accordingly.

RIGHT SHOULDER FORWARD!
FORWARD!

When the head of the regiment is about 200 yards from where its center ſtood, it will be led circling on a moveable pivot into a new direction, and march down perpendicular to the line on which it is to paſs the general, the head of each ſquadron changing direction where the front one does.

When

HALF SQUADRON !
HALT! WHEEL UP !
MARCH !
HALT, DRESS !
MARCH !
EYES, RIGHT !
TAKE ORDER !

When the head of the leading ſquadron arrives within five yards of the line on which it is to paſs the general, the ſeveral words to form the right half of that ſquadron, and dreſs to the right, are given rapidly and ſucceſſively: officers, trumpets and men front, and when the half ſquadron has moved on 20 yards, the command is given to take order; the trumpets nimbly move forward, and place themſelves in two ranks before the commanding officer, and ſound a march. The farriers are a horſe's length behind the center of their troops, and the quarter maſters behind the farriers.

In this manner, each half ſquadron clears the ground for its ſucceeding one, which performs the ſame operation preparatory to paſſing.

CARRY SWORDS !
EYES—RIGHT !

When the leading half ſquadron is within 30 yards of the general, ſwords are carried: and the officers look to the commanding officer, in order to ſalute with him.

Paſſing

Passing the General.

The flank of the leading half ſquadron having been directed in a line, which conducts about four yards before the general; when it arrives about ten yards ſhort of him, the officers ſalute with the commanding officer, and at the laſt motion of dropping their ſwords, dreſs to the right.—The whole muſt march at a ſteady pace, firm, upright, well dreſſed, and eyes fully turned on the general.

EYES---CENTER ! — When the rear rank has paſſed the general ten yards, officers recover their ſwords with the commanding officer. The ſtandard does not ſalute in paſſing, except as before ſpecified.

TAKE CLOSE ORDER ! — When the ſecond ſquadron is paſſing the general, the firſt one cloſes ranks.

Thus each half ſquadron ſucceſſively paſſes.

LEFT—WHEEL !
HALT—DRESS !
MARCH ! — When the firſt half ſquadron has paſſed the general about 150 yards, it wheels to the left, and is ſucceſſively followed in open column by all the others.

In

In this manner the column proceeds, and makes three more wheels at the angles of the ground, till the leading half ſquadron has arrived on the line of paſſing the general; it there halts about thirty yards from him, and the other half ſquadrons continue to cloſe up to quarter diſtance in its rear.—The trumpets join their ſeveral troops in order to file-paſt with them, unleſs they are particularly ordered, all to file at the head of the regiment, and afterwards to aſſemble oppoſite the general.

TO THE FRONT—FILE!

As ſoon as the leading half ſquadron halts, it is ordered to FILE paſt and immediately commences. --- Trumpet, captain, lieutenant, cornet, ſerjeants, corporals, privates, from which every flank brings the talleſt men in front; firſt, the front rank, then the rear rank, cloſed by the farrier and quarter-maſter. --- Each man is half a horſe's length from whoever precedes him; he muſt be well placed, look ſteadily at the general, and have his horſe ſufficiently animated, and neither ſluggiſh nor reſtleſs.---The commanding officer remains near the general during the time of filing.

The

The file muſt cover exactly, paſs within three yards of the general, each man and horſe ſquare, follow a perfect ſtraight line, and the head be ſo conducted, that the rear may never be obliged to halt or hurry: The commanding officer of each troop will therefore come out on the flank as ſoon as he has paſſed, in order the better to regulate the file.—No man is on any account to halt, or to hurry in paſſing, but to keep the ſame ſteady walk, even if the front ſhould improperly get from him.

Officers ſalute ſeparately when oppoſite the general.—The ſtandard is with the leading troop of the ſquadron it belongs to, and does not ſalute, *except* as ſpecified. There is a diſtance of two horſes length betwixt the leader of the paſſing troop, and the quarter maſter of the one that precedes him.

HALT!

HALT!

When the head of the troop has paſſed the general 50 yards, it will halt, till the reſt of the file has gradually and quietly formed up to it; it will then move on 50 yards farther, and halt till the chief part of the troops have, in the ſame manner, filed paſt, formed up, and are cloſed up in its rear, in column, at quarter diſtance.

Juſt

MARCH!

Juſt before the rear troops have cloſed up, and ſo as that the laſt one may not make any unneceſſary pauſe on the ground, the leading one will be put in motion, and each ſucceſſively will follow it in open column, when it acquires its proper diſtance.

Left wheel!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!

Left wheel!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!

The leading half ſquadron will wheel to the left, and proceed to the flank of the ground on which the line is to form: it will there again wheel to the left, and march in the alignement, till it arrives at the right flank of the ground, followed by the others in open column.

HALT!
WHEEL INTO LINE!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The whole will then be ordered to halt, and wheel up into line.

Should

Should a regiment not be directed to file paſt.—It will, after paſſing by half ſquadrons, enter the alignement, and form upon it.

SLOPE SWORDS!

CARRY SWORDS!

In general ſwords will be carried with the blade reſting on the hollow of the ſhoulder, and by the word SLOPE SWORDS. On other ordered occaſions, and in parade, they will be carried upright, at the word CARRY SWORDS.

EYES—RIGHT!

The regiment being now formed on their original ground, about 150 yards from the general, will be cautioned to dreſs to the right, and prepare to diſmount.

As

RETURN SWORDS!
CLOSE TO THE CENTER OF THE REGIMENT, TO DISMOUNT!
PREPARE TO DISMOUNT!
DISMOUNT!
LINK HORSES!
FORM BATTALION!
SHOULDER CARBINES!
FIX BAYONETS!

As directed more particularly in the article of dismounting and forming the battalion.

The regiment while dismounted, and acting on foot, follows in every respect the rules prescribed for the battalion in the Infantry Regulations.

REAR RANK TAKE OPEN DISTANCE!
MARCH!

Officers, &c. in the front, and in parade order.

THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE!
MARCH!

The directing serjeant from between the standards moves out six paces to the front, and two of the standard coverers advance, and line with him.——Music play, and trumpets sound.

HALT, DRESS!

By the center, when within about 40 yards of the general.

EYES, RIGHT!

The

General Salute.

PRESENT ARMS! — The men present arms, and the officers salute, so as to drop their swords with the last motion of presented arms.—The music will play, and all the trumpets sound. The standards drop, and recover with the officers.

SHOULDER ARMS! — The men shoulder, and the officers and standards recover with the last motion.

Marching Past.

TROOPS ON YOUR LEFT, BACKWARD WHEEL!

MARCH!

Halt, Dress!

MARCH!

The regiment will break into column of troops, the right in front.—The column is put in march, music and trumpets being previously ordered to the head of it.—Points will be ascertained by the adjutant for the exact and several wheelings of the troops, so that their right flanks in marching past, shall be only four paces distant from the point where the general is supposed to place himself to receive the salute.

Left, Wheel!
Halt, Dreſs!
March!

The ſeveral troops wheel ſucceſſively at the firſt angle of the ground, which may be about 100 yards from where the center of the regiment ſtood.

Left, Wheel!
Halt, Dreſs!
March!

Eyes, Right!

The troops make this wheel at the ſecond angle of the ground, and which brings them on the line on which they paſs the general.—Each leader of a troop, when it has advanced ſix paces from the wheeling point, changes his poſition quickly by the rear to the right flank of his troop, and as ſoon as he has placed himſelf on that flank, he will order *Eyes, right!*

Rear ranks, take open order!

The leading troop, and each other ſucceſſively, as it arrives within fifty paces of the general, opens its ranks, at which time the officers, including thoſe in ferrefile, move into the front of the troop; the leading one being replaced on the right flank by his coverer.—The commanding officer of the troop is the right officer.

In

In marching paſt the reviewing general.—The muſic or trumpets in two ranks, led by a non-commiſſioned officer, are in front—The colonel is at four paces diſtance—The field officers a horſe's length behind the colonel---The officers of the leading troop four paces from the field officers---The front rank of that troop three paces from their officers: and thus ſucceſſively to the rear.

The eldeſt lieutenant-colonel is in the rear of the whole, as in the infantry, but in the abſence of the colonel he will ſupply his place.---The adjutant is behind and on the left of the lieutenant-colonel.---Such trumpets as are not in front, are on the left flank of their reſpective troops.—All ſerrefile ſerjeants are cloſed up within one pace of their rear ranks.—The ſtandards are two paces behind the center of the fourth troop, in one rank; and their coverers, and the ſerrefiles of that rank are in the ſame line with them.---Staff officers do not march paſt.

In marching paſt at open ranks, the ſerjeant or coverer who is on the right flank of the troop, is reſponſible for the proper wheeling diſtance of his troop, being kept from the front rank of the troop preceding him.---The leading officer on the right muſt invariably preſerve his diſtance of three paces before the right of the troop, and not derange its march: the rank of officers dreſs to it; eyes are turned a little to the right, and they divide the ground, in order to cover the front of the troop.---If there is only one officer with the troop, he is towards the right of it.

The muſic begin to play juſt after the leading troop has made the wheel, which brings them on the line of the general (they muſt at all times take care, and be duly inſtructed to play exactly in the ordered times of march, viz the *Ordinary March*, ſeventy five ſteps in a minute; the *Quick March*, 108 ſteps in a minute: and there can be no excuſe for their being permitted in any inſtance to alter or vary theſe times of march, to which in their daily practice they muſt be ſtrictly habituated) they continue to march on, and do not draw up oppoſite the general, unleſs particularly deſired ſo to do.

The officers, when they arrive at a proper diſtance from the general, muſt prepare to ſalute ſucceſſively by troops, when within ſix paces of him, and recover their ſwords when ten paces paſt him, without in the leaſt altering the rate of march, or impeding the front rank of troops.——The commanding officer, when he has ſaluted at the head of the column, places himſelf near the general, and remains there till the rear has marched paſt.---Each trumpet on the flank ſounds, when the officers of his own troop ſalute.

Rear rank take cloſe order!

The officers commanding troops will each ſucceſſively, when he has paſſed the general by thirty paces, cloſe his rear rank, and at this time each individual of the troop reſumes the poſt which he held when the column was firſt put in motion.

The

Left, Wheel!
Halt, Dreſs!
March!

The ſeveral troops wheel ſucceſſively when oppoſite the ground where the left of the regiment ſtood, their leading officers having ſhifted to their left flank when the ranks cloſed.

HALT!
SUPPORT ARMS!

When the leading troop is near to where the left of the battalion ſtood, the whole halt, muſic ceaſes, arms may be ſupported, and the *Quick March* may inſtantly commence.

Marching past in quick Time.

QUICK MARCH!

The whole march off in quick time—no muſic.

Left—Wheel!
Halt, Dreſs!
Quick March!

The column makes three ſeveral wheels, viz. at the point where the left of the battalion ſtood; at the point where the firſt wheel was made! and at the point where the ſecond wheel was made, which places it on the line of paſſing the general.

CARRY ARMS! — Before the leading troop has made the laſt wheel, arms are carried. When it has completed that wheel the muſic begin to play.

In marching paſt the general in quick time, and at cloſe order, officers do not ſalute or pay any compliment, but are attentive to preſerve the proper wheeling up intervals betwixt their troops.——The leading officer of each troop ſhifts to its right, by its rear, in the ſame manner as in the ordinary march, ſix paces after the laſt wheel, which brings him on the line with the general, and when he has paſſed the general thirty paces, he will reſume his proper pivot flank.—The ſerrefile officers and ſerjeants march in a rank in rear of the troops, at one pace from the rear rank, and officers ſwords are carried againſt the right ſhoulder and ſteady.

The colonel, field officers, ſtandards, adjutant, trumpets, muſic, are in the ſame ſituation as in marching paſt in ordinary time, and the muſic will commence playing juſt after they have wheeled into the line of paſſing, and will continue to march on at the head of the column.

Eyes left! — The ſeveral troops, thirty paces after paſſing, will ſucceſſively dreſs to the left, the proper pivot flank, and the officers will ſhift to that flank.

The

Left wheel!
Halt! Dreſs!
March!

The troops ſucceſſively wheel when oppoſite to the ground where the left of the battalion ſtood.

HALT!
MARCH!

When the head of the column approaches to the left of the ground, on which it originally ſaluted the general, the muſic will ceaſe, and the column will be halted in order to take up the ordinary march, for the purpoſe of moving on an alignement.

Left wheel!
Halt, Dreſs!
March!

When at the point on the left of the alignement.

Forming in Line.

HALT!
WHEEL INTO LINE!
MARCH!
HALT, DRESS!

The column prolongs the alignement till arrived at the point, where its head, or right is to be placed.—It receives the word Halt! pivots are inſtantly corrected if neceſſary, it wheels up into line, and every individual is at his poſt in battalion.

The regiment being at a due diſtance from the general (about ſeventy yards) and in cloſe order: the commanding officer will order it to prime and load with cartridge, and proceed with the firings.

MANUAL EXERCISE!

But ſhould the performance of the manual, and platoon exerciſe be previouſly required —The commanding officer, after the line has formed, gives a caution to that purpoſe, and goes to the rear of the battalion.—The major advances to the front,---opens ranks,---unfixes bayonets,---ſhoulders arms.

He then makes the officers take their poſt of exerciſe in the rear; by facing to the right: marching through the ſeveral intervals occupied by the ſerjeants, &c. and when three paces beyond the rear rank they halt, and then receive the word Front.---The commanding officer; field officers; adjutant; ſerrefile ſerjeants; trumpets; muſic, are at their poſts in the rear as when the battalion is formed at cloſe order; the ſtandards are in the ranks at their poſts, and an officer remains on each flank of the battalion.

The

MANUAL EXERCISE! — The major proceeds with the manual as directed by regulation; obſerving that the front rank only comes down to the laſt poſition of the charge bayonets, the others remain ported.--The ſerjeants who are in the ranks exerciſe with the men.

PLATOON EXERCISE! — The major cloſes rear ranks for the platoon exerciſe, and officers and every other individual take their places as when the battalion is at cloſe order.

The major proceeds with the platoon exerciſe according to regulation.

After the manual and platoon, the battalion remains formed at cloſe order, and the major returns to his poſt in the rear; and the commanding officer comes to the front.

The commanding officer orders the battalion to prime and load---And the regiment is now prepared for ſuch firings as may be or-

FIRINGS.	dered and are conſonant to the principles eſtabliſhed by regulation.—The advancing and retiring in the firings will be performed in quick or ſlow time, as ordered.

After the volley, carbines are loaded and ſhouldered, and the regiment is prepared to mount.

MOUNT, &c. &c.	As directed in the article of mounting.

SQUADRONS FROM CENTER TAKE INTERVALS! THREE'S WHEEL— MARCH! HALT, DRESS! MARCH! HALT! THREE'S WHEEL UP! MARCH! HALT, DRESS!	The regiment will wheel outwards from its center ranks by three's—march on an alignement marked to each flank.—The ſquadrons will ſeverally be halted, when they have acquired their interval diſtances—Front into line, and the line be dreſſed to a flank.

The regiment remains formed at cloſe order, ready for evolutions, movements or attacks, as ordered.

EVOLUTIONS! — If the whole evolutions are not performed, they must be arranged so as to follow each other with propriety on the ground, before the general; and the connecting circumstances of March, Halt, Front, &c. must be applied according to the situation of the squadron.

WHEELINGS in Squadron. } According to regulation.
INCLINING the Regiment. }

MOVEMENTS AND ATTACKS.

Plate 13.

The line is formed about 100 yards from the general.

1. The open column of divisions trots past the general, and again — The column of divisions is formed by the wheeling back of divisions. The column passes and takes up its ground at a trot. The flank leaders do not quit the pivot flanks, but

forms in line on the ground it quitted.

but they may order their diviſions to turn their eyes to the right during the inſtant of paſſing.

2.
Change of poſition on the left flank by throwing back the right the eighth of the circle.

The right is thrown back the eighth of the circle, by the diagonal march of half ſquadrons to the rear.—— (S. 71.)

3.
Change of poſition in open column, the left thrown back.

The line breaks into open column of diviſions, the right in front, and is put in motion. The three or four leading ones take a new direction, parallel to the original one, by wheels to the left. The leading diviſion again changes its direction, by a half wheel to the left, and when the three or four behind it have alſo wheeled into the new direction, the column is halted (the parts of it being now placed in three different directions); and the rear diviſions are ordered to enter it by flank marching (S. 34.) The line is formed by the wheeling up of diviſions to the left.

The

4.

Change of position on the right flank; the left thrown forward.

The line changes position on the right flank by the diagonal marching up of half squadrons, and a line is formed parallel to the original one, out-flanking it on the right, and something more distant from the general.—(S. 71.)

5.

The close column is formed — marches — and deploys into line.

Close column of half squadrons is formed behind the left. (S. 56.)

The close column marches to the right flank, till it is opposite the general (S. 57.), and halts and fronts.

The close column deploys on a center half squadron. (S. 61.)

6.

Countermarch of the divisions of the open column.

The line wheels into open column of divisions, the right in front,—advances a short distance and halts.

Counter-marches its divisions, and becomes a column, the left in front. (S. 45.)

Marches, returns to its former ground and halts.

The

7. The open column changes poſition to the flank, by the flank march of its diviſions.	The column, by the flank march of each of its diviſions, moves two hundred yards to the rear. Halts and fronts again into column, the left in front. (S. 40.) The column wheels into line.
8. Attack by ſquadrons ſucceſſively.	The line attacks to the front, by ſquadrons from the right; each moving when the one preceding it has juſt finiſhed its attack.—They ſucceſſively arrive and halt in line.
9. The line retires in echellon.	The line retires by echellon of ſquadrons from the left, each thirty yards behind the other, and when the ſecond ſquadron is at a ſufficient diſtance, it is ordered to halt and front, and the others immediately come into line with it.
10. The line attacks to the front.	Directed by a named ſquadron, it halts and dreſſes.

The

The two right ſquadrons form column of half ſquadrons, behind the adjoining half ſquadron, at quarter diſtance.

11.

The line retires and forms two columns.

The whole retire (ranks by three's) Halt, Front; when ordered the column cloſes up, and at the ſame time, the two left half ſquadrons form alſo in cloſe column, behind their adjoining right one.

Although this diſpoſition is formed during the retreat, it may be ſuppoſed an original one made at a diſtance from the enemy, and taken up from column of march to the front.

Fig. 72.

The left column deploys into line, and at the ſame time the right column (except the front half ſquadron) wheels to the right by three's, marches, and the heads of the half ſquadrons take a new oblique direction.——When theſe have gone 100 yards or more, the leading diviſion is fronted and dreſſed, ſo as to be nearly perpendicular to its charging point (the enemy's flank) it advances, and the others proceed

12.

Attack of the enemy in front, and flank.

ceed to the flank, ſo as ſucceſſively to front, and come up to its right, and that of each other, during which the movement of the line is alſo carrying on, and made to correſpond to this flank attack (S. 102)—After the attack purſuers are detached.

13.
Retire in two lines by alternate half ſquadrons.

The regiment retires by alternate half ſquadrons in two lines (S. 99.) covered by ſkirmiſhers, and the right flank attack gradually during the retreat, takes its proper line and diſtances from the left ſquadrons, ſo that the regiment may be again in line, about the time it is ordered to halt and front.

The two left ſquadrons form column of diviſions at quarter diſtance, behind the left diviſion of the adjoining ſquadron. This may be ſuppoſed an original diſpoſition taken up from column of march to the front.

The column marches from its rear, (as in S. 46.) moves in open column, and is conducted

ducted (S. 101.) into the line, which is to place it obliquely (not perpendicularly) to the flank of the enemy; when its head is sufficiently advanced, it wheels up into line of half squadrons, at half intervals (which are taken during the movement) and instantly moves on to the attack (its position being such, that its inward flank shall not in the charge interfere with that of the other line which has to pursue a different direction (together with the squadrons before in line, whose movements are made corresponding to it, that the whole may arrive on the enemy at the same time.)

14. Attack of the enemy in front, and flank.

15. Retire in two lines.

The half squadrons of what was the column, by a flank march, ranks by threes, place themselves in second line, at 60 yards distance behind the other squadrons, and so as to out-flank that line on one flank by a half squadron.—— During this the front line detaches

taches ſkirmiſhers, and in due time both lines retire together; and, when ordered, halt and front, and the ſecond line is ordered to form up to the firſt.

16.
Attack of infantry.

The regiment attacks in two columns of half ſquadrons from the center. The two center half ſquadrons cloſe to each other, move on, charge through the line, and gradually and ſucceſſively halt: when theſe begin to advance, the reſt of the line on both flanks wheel inwards by three's; each two half ſquadrons unite, front, and follow at a diſtance of 70 or 80 yards behind each other, and attack ſucceſſively in the following manner.

The two leading ones proceed as above. The ſecond ones before they arrive at the line, make a quarter wheel (half ſquadrons) outwards, paſs the line in that direction, and gradually come to a halt.—— The third ones, when they come on the line, wheel (half ſquadrons)

ſquadrons) outwards, charge along the line a certain diſtance, and then wheel up to the front.—The fourth ones halt upon the line, ready to ſupport to the front, or to either flank. All the half ſquadrons as they halt, detach ſome purſuers, whoſe buſineſs is not a diſtance, but in the neighbourhood of their ſquadron. If there is a ſecond line, it ſupports or acts as ordered.

17.

The regiment retires in two columns from the flanks.

The regiment thus irregularly placed, calls in purſuers, and at the ſame time retires (rear rank leading) from each flank in column of diviſions, which approach each other nearly within four yards) when behind the center; the whole thus following in two columns at half diſtance.—The head of the column halts, and the other diviſions cloſe up to quarter column. The whole are then ordered to front, ranks by three's.

The regiment may be ſuppoſed thus aſſembled from a march forward, and that it has a defilé in its front, which it is to paſs, form in line of diviſions, and then to advance.

18.

The regiment paſſes a defile, and forms in line of diviſions.

The two leading diviſions file (each two men in front) from their inward flanks, open out to a diſtance of half their front, and when about 50 yards advanced, their fronts halt, and they form in line.

When the leading diviſions are completely in file, a command is given, and each of the others at the ſame inſtant files from its inward flank along its own front, and is then conducted to its head point in the line, and thus ſucceſſively form up to the two leading diviſions, till the whole is in a line of diviſions (an officer at the head of each at half diſtance of intervals.

This mode is preſcribed in this particular ſituation, to ſhew a readineſs and quickneſs in extending into line; but was the whole of the column actually to paſs a defile, on a very narrow front, each diviſion muſt of courſe do it on the ſame narrow front as its leading one, be obliged to go over the ſame ground, and the formation

formation would be much longer, and be a ſucceſſive one from center to flanks of the line.

19. Attack to the front. — The regiment in line of diviſions makes a ſhort attack to the front, and ſends out purſuers.

In line of half ſquadrons or diviſions, and in all attacks made by them, an officer is at the head of each, and care muſt be taken that the ſtandard is in the center of one of them.

20. Line of ſquadrons formed. — The regiment wheels inwards by diviſions to form the line of ſquadrons, and towards whatever diviſion (which ſtands faſt) will bring the center of the line, when formed, oppoſite the General, at the ſame time the ſignal is given for purſuers to return.

21. Regiment advances in parade. — Rear ranks are opened, and the regiment advances in parade order; trumpets ſounding, &c. &c. within thirty yards of the General.

Halt.

General——Salute.

The diſmounting, evolutions, movements and attacks are ſuch as ſeem eſſential, for the general practice of the regiment. The whole of them may not be required at any one exerciſe or inſpection, and ſuch therefore as are to be performed (always including the firſt ſeven movements if ſpace allows) muſt be arranged and connected according to the extent of, and circumſtances of the ground on which they are to be exhibited; and on the ſmalleſt ſpot ſuch changes of poſition may be made, as will clearly ſhew what may be expected from the body in more extended ſituations.

When the line of one, two, or more regiments is at any time marching paſt in open column of any kind, and at open or cloſe ranks, it muſt occupy no greater extent of ground than when it originally wheeled into column. Its order is never to be broken or lengthened out, nor is the diſtance between diviſions, ſquadrons, or regiments, ever to be encreaſed to make room for muſic, &c. in the intervals, or for its own partial appearance. The muſic of each regiment (when any) will play in paſſing, but will continue to march on, unleſs otherwiſe at the time particularly directed.

When

When two or more regiments are exercifed or reviewed together, they will be formed in one (or two) line with the ordered interval.—They will receive the general; march paft; and may perform the fame identical movements as before prefcribed for the fingle regiment, obferving the additional directions that are given for thofe of the line.—Difmounting, filing, or frequently marching paft, will hardly be required from a confiderable body of cavalry, whofe great object, in movements of exercife or infpection, muft be quick, but juft, change of pofition, made at a rate which can maintain order and not exhauft the animal, and from which, when acquired, an immediate, firm, and vigorous attack can be made.—On fuch occafions, movements (and the larger the body the fewer and fimpler they muft be) executed by the general principles prefcribed, are eafily arranged, correfponding to the fituation the body is fuppofed to be in with refpect to the enemy, and alfo to the local circumftances of the ground.

The number of paces mentioned in the feveral movements are not pofitively prefcribed, but are fuppofed to be nearly fuch as will give the intended relative fituation.

No improper paufes fhould be made betwixt the connected parts of the fame movement.—The detach-

ed points neceſſary in formations ſhould be timeouſly prepared and given by the perſons who are ſo ordered.

Whatever explanations regard the movements of the regiment when diſmounted, and the firings, &c. &c. will be found in the regulations, and in the review exerciſe preſcribed for the infantry.

The intention of fixing upon ſome of the moſt eſſential cavalry movements, and thus directing them to be executed by each regiment when ſeen ſeparately, is:—That thereby the inſpecting General may be enabled to report the more minutely and comparatively on the performance by each regiment of the great leading points of movements.—He will therefore, beſides the circumſtances that relate to the dreſs and general appearance of man and horſe, the exerciſe on foot, &c. &c. particularly obſerve and ſpecify,

Whether or not

The original formation of ſquadrons and regiments is according to order.

The marches are made with accuracy, at the paces required, and on ſuch objects as have been given.

The proper diſtances in column are at all times preſerved.

The

The wheelings are made quick, juſt, and in the manner preſcribed.

The formations into line are made true in the intended direction, without falſe openings, or neceſſity of correction; or that corrections, when neceſſary, are inſtantly made.

The changes of poſition are made with due celerity and juſtneſs.

The officers are alert in their changes of ſituation, exact in their own perſonal movements, and loud, decided, and pointed in their words of command.

The march in line is uniformly ſteady, without opening, floating, or cloſing.

The flank march is compact, firm, and without improperly lengthening out.

The officers and under officers give the aids required of them with due quickneſs and preciſion.

Hurry and delay in the movements are equally avoided.

In the firings, the loading is quick, the levelling is juſt, and the officers firm in their commands.

The officers, non-commiſſioned officers and men ride well, and the horſes are active, vigorous, and well broken.

When a conſiderable body of cavalry, or when infantry and cavalry are united, and to act in corps, their combined operations, ſuch as movements in column, echellon, or line; their formations: the conduct of

attacks or retreats, &c. depending on numbers, and circumſtances of ground or ſituation, can only be determined and applied according to the views of the commander.—But the great principles of movement laid down for the line will ſtill direct, and the detail of execution will remain invariable, being compounded of thoſe preſcribed for the ſquadron, regiment, and line.

D. D.

1st January, 1799.

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS the Commander in Chief, having thought it neceſſary to give out the following Orders, to the corps of cavalry encamped laſt ſummer near Windſor, is pleaſed to direct, that the ſame be communicated to all other corps of cavalry whatever, and that they ſhall be entered, obſerved, and conſidered, as Standing Orders, in farther Explanation of His MAJESTY's Regulations for the Formations and Movements of the Cavalry, of the year 1796.

In the courſe of the exerciſe of the Cavalry, His Royal Highneſs the Commander in Chief has obſerved, that notwithſtanding His Majeſty's Regulations were, and are eſtabliſhed, for enſuring a perfect ſameneſs in all operations whatever of the troops, and without which no body larger than a ſquadron, or ſingle regiment, can poſſibly be managed, or act to effect; yet, that conſiderable deviations have taken place, in ſome regiments, from thoſe regulations, in the execution of the preſcribed movements,

in

in the mode of giving the words of command, in the words of command themſelves, and in other particulars. He therefore enjoins the ſtricteſt, and moſt literal obſervance of thoſe Regulations, in the training of all individual regiments in their quarters, ſo that not the leaſt difference of execution may exiſt when they are aſſembled; but that without difficulty, or previous explanation, they may be prepared to act together, and execute the commands of the general, who himſelf is not to depart from the fixed principles, and modes of movement preſcribed: And in ordering the ſtricteſt attention to be given to theſe circumſtances, his Royal Highneſs truſts on every future occaſion he will ſee their good effects.

His Royal Highneſs further directs an exact conformity to the following points, that have more particularly met his obſervation.

That commanding officers of regiments, brigades, or larger bodies, are moveable according to circumſtances, and ſhould by no means conſider the center of ſuch bodies, as their general poſt in exerciſe or movements, or expect by the exertion of one voice, from one fixed ſituation, to command and direct the whole; their preſence is more frequently required near one, or the other flank; in general they ſhould be at the conducting point of movement, or formation, and to that addreſs their orders by voice, or meſſage; for if that point is led, or placed in the direction

rection it ſhould take, there is little danger of the parts of the body, not properly, and ſucceſſively conforming to it.

There are many ſituations in the movements of great bodies, where commands, that are not immediately to influence the whole, are not given loud, but quietly, to the directing body, to whoſe ſituation the reſt by the eye conform; as when the head of an open column is ordered to halt, that the reſt of the diviſions may move on, and ſucceſſively ſtop in cloſe column; and on all occaſions where parts only of a large body are to march, or halt ſucceſſively, commanding officers of regiments ſhould have an attention to give their commands in ſuch manner, as not to produce an alteration in thoſe points, that are not meant to be influenced by them at that inſtant.

Where a large body is marching in column, or columns, through narrow ground, and when its parts are to be aſſembled beyond the defilé in ſeveral lines, in a compact manner behind each other---ſuch parts are not to begin to aſſemble when the leading one does, but the head of each line is ſucceſſively firſt to come up to the ground on which it is to ſtand, and when it there halts, its proper followers (and not before) move into line with it, and thereby do not impede the bodies that are behind them, which are ſtill in the defilé, and are to perform the ſame operation.

Words

Words of execution, ſuch as *March, Halt, Trot, Gallop*, &c. are ordered to be pronounced ſhort, loud and ſharp, and by no means to be lengthened out, or given in a drawling tone of voice; if neceſſary, they may be repeated more than once in quick movements.

The words of command, as marked in the regulations, are to be ſtrictly made uſe of, and no other ſubſtituted in their room: in the quick movements, and manœuvres of cavalry, they muſt be rapidly given; are ordered (S. 13.) to be much abridged, and all expletives omitted.

Preciſion of movement depends altogether on the inſtant circulation of commands of execution, and that on the attention of officers to the point they may be expected to come from: unleſs the whole of a body, however large, is put in motion at the ſame inſtant, a column will be extended, and a line will be ill dreſſed, and with falſe intervals.

The principles of all cavalry evolutions, and movements, may, to great advantage, be practiſed, and learnt on foot, making uſe of the cavalry formations, tellings off, words of command, and method of execution; not of thoſe peculiar to the infantry.

When a new line to be marched or formed upon, is taken up by markers, commanding officers of ſquadrons, of regiments, and all other perſons whatever, will take care that during ſuch operation, they

they do not ſtand upon, or obſcure the direction of that line.—In general, too many markers are thrown out: the Regulations are full and explicit on that head. In movements in column, commanding officers of ſquadrons, and regiments, ſhould keep wide of the flanks, that the pivot leaders may more correctly follow each other, and that they themſelves may the better ſee, and diſtinguiſh the relative ſituation of the whole.

Officers do not ſufficiently attend to the difference between changes of direction made by *Wheel*, and by *Shoulder forward*. In the firſt caſe, one flank remains fixed, while the other is on the wheel; in the ſecond caſe, both flanks continue in motion, (as in S. 8.) *Shoulder forward*, applies to a ſmall front, and to a column of march, where the change of direction is to be made gradually, without an alteration of the pace. In proportion to the front of the body ſo changing, muſt be the degree of ſweep made by both flanks, and in all caſes the reverſe flank conforms to the pace of the pivot flank, and in no caſe can it be made ſhort and quick, otherwiſe it becomes a wheel.

So many of the operations of the ſquadron, regiment, and of the line, depend on the leading, and well conducting of the diviſions of ſquadrons, of half ſquadrons, or of entire ſquadrons in *Ranks by threes*, that in the quarters, of regiments, ſquadrons, or troops,

troops, the practice of the movements of ranks by threes, ſhould be conſidered as the moſt eſſential point to be attended to. There can be no quarter whatever, where there is not ground to exerciſe, and apply this movement to ſquadrons, and ſmaller bodies; and commanding officers of regiments muſt ſee every officer critically perform this duty.—It muſt be made at all paces, it is in general, (except in column of route) a quick movement, and the changes in its direction are made, by attention to the conducting officer, and by ſhoulder forward; it muſt be led, both in ſtraight and in waving lines, and the body be accuſtomed at once (as when connected with greater bodies) to form quickly to front, to rear, to right, to left—It muſt march by the pivot flank, cloſe, and without opening out, as at the moment when it firſt wheels, and quits its original ground.—As this is the ſmalleſt front on which any body, from a diviſion of a ſquadron to a line, can make a flank movement, without a material extenſion, its general uſe and application muſt be felt by, and be obvious to every one. If a regiment, or line is to perform this operation, the utmoſt activity muſt be exerted, that the whole are put at once in motion, which depends on the quick eye and order of commanding officers of regiments. Quick movements and formations of ranks by two's, made with accuracy, are alſo an eſſential practice; and the quick breaking off, doubling, and moving up in the march in line; and (without halting that line) to avoid obſtacles of ground ſhould be much attended to.

An

An alertneſs, knowledge, and practice of the duties of advanced, and rear guards, of patroles, of flanking parties, of ſkirmiſhing, is common and eſſential to cavalry of all denominations; and although light troops are more frequently employed, than regiments of the line, on thoſe occaſions, yet every regiment ſhould be equally adroit, and inſtructed in theſe ſervices, and able to take care of itſelf in all ſituations. Every regiment in quarters, is therefore to make an attainment of theſe points, an eſſential object of its practice and exerciſe; and commanding officers are to inſtruct their young officers in a methodical, quick, and ſoldier-like diſcharge of theſe duties, which the arms, lately given to the cavalry, render equally eaſy to all. His Royal Highneſs has no doubt, that on future occaſions he will ſee the effects of ſuch inſtruction, and attention in the attainment of which the following rules and circumſtances are preſcribed, both in exerciſe and in ſervice.

Skirmiſhing.—Skirmiſhers or ranks detached to fire, ſhould be at leaſt 200 yards from the ſquadron if the ground allows.—When any part of the ſquadron is detached to attack, or fire, the remainder always ſupport with drawn ſwords.—The ſtandard always remains with the body of the ſquadron, and never moves with any detached part of it.—Single ſkirmiſhers can take the ſureſt aim with their carbines to the left; they will alſo occaſionally fire to the front and to the right; but muſt take the greateſt care not to hit or burn the horſe's head, or at that time to ſpur him;——

Skirmiſhers ſhould always retire in proportion as the ſquadron retires; cover the front of it at 150 yards diſtance at leaſt, and manage ſo as to keep up a conſtant fire; nor ſhould they ever remain in a cluſter to become a mark.—All firings are beſt performed on the move, and it is unneceſſary to halt for that purpoſe only.—Whenever the line retires, ſkirmiſhers ſhould be ordered out to cover the retreat, and ſhould join at the firſt ſignal.—No ſkirmiſhers are ever to fire, but when advanced to the front, and never when behind other men.—Skirmiſhers if not ordered to join, retire through the intervals when the line advances to charge; and form, and ſupport.—The retreat of the line ſhould be generally made at a briſk pace; to get quick off the ground, and no time ought to be loſt in giving the proper ſignal, or word of command.—In detached open ranks, the officer commanding the rank is always moſt conveniently placed in the center of it, and the men dreſs and are directed by him.

Skirmiſhers are to be very attentive and alert in inſtantly obeying the ſignals made for their direction, particularly thoſe of ceaſing to fire, and of rallying to their diviſions: and when the ſignal for calling in ſkirmiſhers is ſucceeded by that of rally made from the main body, the diviſions themſelves return quickly, even though they ſhould not then be joined by their detached men.

Skirmiſhing detachments are uſually made of a flank diviſion or ſubdiviſion (or their front or rear ranks only)

only) of ſquadrons.—*In advancing* theſe are rapidly ſent forward about 150 yards in front of their reſpective ſquadrons, from which *body* are detached three or *more files*, one hundred yards ſtill farther forward, where they halt, fronting the enemy.—The outward flank files of this advanced detachment ſtand faſt, while the others file inwards towards each other, in order to divide the ground, and cover the front of the reſerve as well as that of their ſquadron.—This operation followed by all the detachments from the ſquadrons, will effectually cover the front of the corps.

In this ſituation the advanced line of ſkirmiſhers are to have their piſtols or carbines at the recover, (if piſtols, then the ſword is to be ſlung to the wriſt.)—The rear rank men will invariably cover thoſe of the front rank, while the front rank advances in ſkirmiſhing.

When the front rank has fired, the rear rank is brought forward in its turn, by the officer or ſerjeant who is ſtationed between the two lines in order to ſee and direct the rear one.—The advancing line will regulate its pace by his, and will halt and dreſs by him when he halts.—For this movement of the rear line to the front, the officer or ſerjeant commanding gives the word, Rear rank forward, accompanied by a wide ſignal with his ſword; the rear rank paſſes the front line fifty yards; when halted, the rear line begins to load.

The files of the front line muſt attend particularly to the circumſtance of not firing till the rear line

(their ſupport) is loaded. On this principle will each rank paſs through the other, ſucceſſively firing and ſupporting each other.

Each man of the front rank, either in advancing, or retiring, will paſs his rear rank man to his right, whilſt the rear rank men under the ſame circumſtances paſs on the left. This regulation prevents any two men paſſing through the ſame interval.

In retiring. When the rank next the enemy has fired, it retires by the word of command, aſſiſted by ſignal, and forms fifty yards in the rear of thoſe by whom they were before covered, and as they front immediately begin to load.—The inſtant the retiring line has paſt the ſupporting line, the ſkirmiſhers make a flank movement to each hand for a few paces and back again, in order not to be fixt marks for the enemy's ſkirmiſhers: at the ſame time they are occaſionally to halt and fire as they perceive their rear file loaded—Thus the two lines retire through each other ſucceſſively fronting and ſupporting.—To retire, the word of command is, *About*. To face the enemy, *Front*.——In retiring, each file turns his horſe to the left about.—In fronting, he brings him to the right about.

Whenever ſkirmiſhers are called in, they form to the reſerve, returning their piſtols and ſloping their ſwords, without waiting for any word of command to do ſo.—The officer commanding the diviſion, puts the diviſion about by three's and returns to his place in

in ſquadron.—But ſhould the line be advancing to the charge, the diviſions, if they can, will gain their place in ſquadron, and join in the charge: or otherwiſe they will form behind the ſquadron and ſupport.

When a line or column moves to a flank, and that ſkirmiſhers are out, they are not to wait an order for them to conform to that movement of the main body, but will cover that flank which may be expoſed to the enemy; for inſtance, if the movement of the line is to the right, then to the left of the line of march muſt be covered—and the reverſe is to be obſerved in the oppoſite caſe.

The ſkirmiſhers covering a flank movement will march in ſingle file, the rear rank man immediately behind his front rank file, judging the diſtance ſo as completely to cover the ſquadron, which ſhould be outflanked by its ſkirmiſhers rather than otherwiſe. The ſame principle of reſerving the fire with the front line till the rear ſupport is loaded, muſt equally be attended to in flank movements, as in the caſes of advancing or retiring; but in the practice there is this difference, that a front file in a flank movement cannot ſee when his reſerve has loaded, therefore it is to be announced to him by word *Ready*, when he will fire at diſcretion.

Advanced Guards and Patroles on the flanks are in all ſituations eſſential to guard againſt a ſurpriſe, and

the ſtrength of both muſt depend upon that of the body in march, and other circumſtances. Although, in general, the movement of an army is ſo covered by light troops and advanced corps, that every other precaution ſeems unneceſſary; yet no column or detached body is to neglect this military precaution for its peculiar ſafety; and the conduct of an advanced guard of an officer and 40 or 50 men, may ſhow the general principles on which more conſiderable bodies are to act on the ſame ſervice.

The advanced guard in general marches about two hundred yards in front of the column, regiment, or ſmaller body; but the diſtance muſt depend on the nature of the country, which when woody, makes it neceſſary to remain nearer the main body, than when it is free from encloſures.

From the advanced guard, the officer detaches to his front, a ſerjeant and twelve men, who are to preſerve the ſame diſtance from the officer's party, that the officer is from the column. The ſerjeant is in like manner to ſend two men forward, and detach two others, one on each flank, as ſide-patroles, who are to keep in a line with thoſe men moſt in advance. The officer will, for the ſame purpoſe, detach one non-commiſſioned officer and four men, on each of his flanks. The ſide patroles are diſtant between three and four hundred yards on the flanks, which diſtance varies according to the places they have to examine, and the impediments met with on the march. They are not to loſe ſight of each other for any length of time,

time, but to take the advantage of every height to look round them, and ſee that they preſerve a correſponding line with each other, and the march of the advance guard. The patroles muſt examine all villages, hollow ways and woods, that lie in the direction of their march, taking care to reconnoitre from the heights, the country below, before they deſcend into the vallies. As ſoon as the enemy is perceived, the perſon who diſcovers him, muſt fire a piſtol to announce it; when the non-commiſſion officer of the party will ride to the ſpot, and having made his obſervations, ſend a correct report of what he has ſeen to the officer, who is to convey it to the officer commanding the column.

It is a neceſſary precaution to ſend out ſide patroles from the column, and likewiſe a rear guard, when it is poſſible for an enemy to approach in that direction. The rear guard is to be conducted on the ſame principle [illegible]ed for the advance.

An out-poſt having been taken up under a knowledge of the country, its *relief* will be conducted in the following manner:

When arrived at the poſt, the relief takes place by drawing up behind the old guard, who muſt be on horſeback to receive the new guard. The number of men neceſſary for the relief of the videts (or ſentries), are then to be marched off, and conducted by a non-

commiſſioned officer of the old guard. The officers attend the relief, and the relieving officer muſt inform himſelf of the particular orders of every videt; have pointed out to him how far the videts are advanced by day, and where retired to at night; whether the enemy appeared during the preceding twenty-four hours, and in what direction.—He muſt aſk the names of the villages, and the direction of the roads, which he will compare on the ſpot with his map.—He ſhould know what patroles have been made, to what diſtance, and how frequent; what poſts his flanks communicate with; and, in caſe of an attack, the ſupport to be expected, and from what quarters. He likewiſe will inform himſelf of the name of the field officer commanding the line of poſts, and where he is to be found, in order to report to him if neceſſary.

The Relief having been made, the new guard will take up the ſame ground which the old one occupied. The men may diſmount, but not take off their accoutrements, or be permitted to ſtray from their horſes.

The horſes are to be kept conſtantly bitted, except when feeding, which muſt never exceed one fourth of the number at a time, and at ſuch hours as the enemy are leaſt likely to appear.

No perſon is to be allowed to paſs the out-poſt, without producing an order from the General commanding

manding in chief; nor is any perſon to be permitted to approach the guard, under a pretence of ſelling proviſions, or for any other purpoſe, without the officer firſt being informed of it.

The officer muſt viſit his videts frequently by day, and keep conſtant patroles moving by night. The appearance of an enemy in force, their approach by night—or the deſertion of any of the videts with the watch-word, muſt not only be immediately communicated to the field officer commanding, but to the poſts on the right and left; and the *Counterſign* be changed to guard againſt ſurpriſe.

Before ſun ſet, if not done in the early part of the day, the officer ſhould reconnoitre in front of his poſt; for which purpoſe he muſt determine from his map, the route to be taken, and with fifteen or twenty of his guard, he will advance on the ſame principle of caution [illegible]ated out for an advanced guard; only, that the party muſt be concentrated, the force being leſs conſiderable and unſupported. An officer on out-poſt duty ſhould be provided with a good glaſs, which in reconnoitring, will always be found very ſerviceable. Wherever two roads meet, the party ſhould halt, till one of the roads is reconnoitred, without which, it cannot be ſafe to proceed on the other.

On duties of patrole, or reconnoitring parties, the men muſt be ſilent and watchful, and march at open files.

At night, Patroles are to be conducted in ſmaller bodies than reconnoitring parties, they will direct their march on the different roads leading towards the enemy. Three men are to be advanced in front of the patrole; two of whom may be a hundred yards, and the third man fifty more, in front of them—a caution always requiſite to be taken to guard againſt ſurpriſe.

A non-commiſſioned officer, or junior officer, generally conducts the patrole, as the officer commanding muſt not leave his guard during the night.

The utmoſt ſilence is neceſſary to the ſafety of a patrole, and that they ſhould march with files very open. The barking of dogs in villages occupied by the enemy—moving of lights, or any noiſe breaking in on the ſtillneſs of night, are tokens of the enemy being in motion; and to which patroles muſt direct their particular attention.

The guard will mount their horſes an hour before ſun ſet, and continue ſo till dark; likewiſe before day-break, and remain mounted, till the approach of an enemy may be clearly perceived, or that the relief arrives: which relief generally takes place at day-break, in order to have the guards doubled at the time moſt dangerous for ſurpriſe.*

* On the above ſubject, and on field ſervice, much information is to be gained from the King of Pruſſia's Inſtructions to his Cavalry officers, tranſlated by Lt. Forſter; alſo in General Warnery's Treatiſe on Cavalry, tranſlated by Lt. Colonel Koehler, and Inſtructions for Huſſars and Light Cavalry acting as ſuch in time of War, all publiſhed by Egerton.

As

As the *Cavalry Regulations* have not provided for ſeveral parade points of appearance, of a brigade, or larger body, the following circumſtances are therefore to be obſerved.

When two or more regiments are formed in line to receive His Majeſty, each individual is at the poſt already aſſigned him regimentally, except the trumpets, who are aſſembled on the right of their reſpective regiments, formed in two ranks, and theſe blow whatever marches or airs they are ordered.

The commanding officer of the regiment is at the head of the right ſquadron; the next ſenior officers are at the head of ſquadrons, to receive or to paſs His Majeſty.

The major-general of the brigade, is alſo at the head of the right ſquadron of his brigade.

The lieutenant-generals are alſo at the head of the right of their diviſions, or wings.

Although His Majeſty generally arrives oppoſite the center of a ſingle regiment, yet in an extenſive line he may be often expected, at, or near the right, or left, and in that ſituation to receive the general ſalute; wherever His Majeſty does arrive, he will be there received, and from thence attended by the general commanding the whole.

When His Majeſty, or a general officer, is to paſs between the ranks, they are always to be at full open order,

order, and the diſtance, given by the right regiment, to be conformed to by the others.

At a review or inſpection, regiments, brigades, or lines, do not march paſt in column of ſquadrons, but in column of half ſquadrons.

In paſſing by in half ſquadrons at open ranks, the commander of the ſquadron will be in front of his leading half ſquadron, covered by the ſtandard, with which the other officers of the half ſquadron dreſs.—In the ſecond half ſquadron all its officers are in front, and in one line—The trumpets are all in front of the regiment, and when they have paſſed, wheel quickly round, and remain poſted oppoſite His Majeſty, and ſound till the regiment has paſſed; when they ceaſe (and thoſe of the ſucceeding regiments commence) follow their regiment, and regain its front.

The half ſquadrons, or diviſions, will dreſs, and cover to the paſſing hand after the ſucceſſive wheel, which brings them on the line of paſſing; they will open ranks 60 or 70 yards, before they approach His Majeſty, and cloſe them about the ſame diſtance after paſſing, and they will continue ſo to dreſs, and preſerve the line, till each diviſion wheels at the point, where the head one has changed its direction; there, and not before, the dreſſing and covering will be made to the proper pivot flank of diviſions, on which the officers will reſume their poſts.

The

The whole paſs, (whether at open, or cloſe ranks) as one column; nor is any diviſion, ſquadron, or regiment, to increaſe, or alter the diſtances it poſſeſſed at the moment it wheeled from line into column.

In paſſing by half ſquadrons or diviſions, at cloſe ranks, the ſtandard may take the center of the front rank of the leading one.—The commanding officer is before it, other officers are at their ſquadron poſts, and care is taken, that there ſhall be an officer on each paſſing flank.

At the drawing of ſwords, and general ſalute, on His Majeſty's approach, the trumpets all ſound the parade march. When His Majeſty paſſes along the line, each regiment ſucceſſively ſounds its own march, or ſuch other as it ſhall be ordered, and the ſame is done by each regiment when it paſſes His Majeſty.

His Majeſty's regulations have preſcribed the ſoundings with which all generals, and other perſons, are to be received; when they paſs along the line, or the line before them, the trumpet ſoundings will be the ſame as before His Majeſty.

The trumpet flouriſh, in drawing ſwords, is uſed regimentally on their own ground, and is the ſounding uſed in receiving a major-general; it is repeated twice for a lieutenant-general, and to all ſuperior generals the march is ſounded.

In

In parade, to receive His Majeſty, or the commanding general, the trumpets are aſſembled on the right of their regiments, (whether ſingle or in line) in two ranks, and the ſtaff beyond them.—The ſtaff does not march paſt.

On all occaſions of exerciſe, and manœuvre, trumpets are behind their troops, and ſquadrons, unleſs otherwiſe detached.

If His Majeſty ſees a brigade, he will be received at the point of his approach, in the manner already directed, by the general commanding it—If a ſingle regiment, in the ſame manner by its commanding officer.

After paſſing in parade, and in movements, and exerciſe, it will depend on the commanding officer of the regiment, to place the other field officers at the head of ſquadrons, or to aſſign them the ſuperintendance of wings, in order the better to aſſiſt.

In general, regiments manœuvre at too great a diſtance from the perſon inſpecting them; they ought to terminate many of their movements and formations within 20 or 30 yards of where he ſtands.

His Majeſty's regulations for the formations, movements, and field exerciſe of the infantry, are,

in

in every point, to be followed, and applied to cavalry, when dismounted, and formed in battalion.

Cavalry regiments, when dismounted, and formed in line, will have an interval of six paces between each.

When the regiments dismount, field officers, and adjutants do not dismount, but remain on horseback.

When the dismounted line advances in front, at close ranks, general officers, and commanding officers of regiments, are behind the center—other field officers are behind the flanks of the battalion.

When the dismounted line is at open ranks, field officers are on the flanks of the battalion, in a line with the men, and general officers, and commanding officers of regiments, are in front.

In passing on foot, all mounted officers are in front of the regiment, except the adjutant, who is in the rear.

The movements and operations of the cavalry and infantry, being founded on the same principles, are so similar in their details, that a knowledge of the one is essential to every officer of the other; and the infantry regulations being, in several points, more explanatory, than those of the cavalry, should be carefully perused for the elucidation of the other.

On the whole, His Royal Highneſs directs the ſtricteſt conformity to His Majeſty's regulations of exerciſe, and movement.—He truſts that every officer, according to orders, is provided with a copy, ſo that by a conſtant reference to, and a ſtudy of their principles, the application and execution of them may become familiar and rapid.

His Royal Highness the Commander in Chief having obſerved, that the ſoundings of the trumpet and bugle horn, for duties and exerciſe, are different in different regiments of cavalry; in order to correct ſuch an important point of ſervice, and eſtabliſh perfect uniformity, He has been pleaſed to direct that the notes of the following ſoundings ſhall be printed and publiſhed, and that all corps whatever, of cavalry, ſhall conform to and alone uſe them, for the purpoſes expreſſed by their titles, and explanation.

They may be divided into thoſe of *duties* uſed in camp, and quarters; and thoſe of *exerciſe*, uſed in the movements, and *manœuvres* of the troops.

TRUMPET

TRUMPET DUTY SOUNDINGS.

1. *Reveillé.*
2. *Stable Call.* — For ſtable duties.
3. *Boots and Saddles.* } When to turn out on
4. *To Horſe.* } horſeback for a march, exerciſe or other duty.
5. *Draw Swords.* } Theſe ſoundings begin
6. *Return Swords.* } at the inſtants of drawing the ſword *from*, and returning it *to* the ſcabbard.
7. *Parade March.*
8. *Parade Call.* — For aſſembling on foot.
9. *Officers Call.*
10. *Serjeants Call.*
11. *Trumpeters Call.*
12. *Orders.*
13. *Dinner Call.* — For men and for officers.
14. *Watering Call.* } To turn out in watering order.
15. *Setting the Watch.*

Theſe duty ſoundings, according to ſituation, are given by one trumpet, or by the whole of the quarter, regiment, or camp.

TRUMPET EXERCISE SOUNDINGS.

16. *March.* — The ſquadron, regiment, or line being halted, the trumpet of the commander will accompany the word, *The will advance*; and at the word *March*, the whole will move at a walk.

17. *Trot.*
18. *Gallop.*
19. *Charge.* — When the body is marching at a walk, on the ſignal to trot, the whole inſtantly receive the word *Trot*, and change pace immediately. The ſame is to be obſerved from the trot to the light *Gallop*, and from the gallop to the *Charge*.—During the charge itſelf, the trumpets of all the ſquadrons that are charging, may ſound.

20. *Halt.* — The whole halt on the word of command. After the halt of a retreating body, the proper command will bring it to its proper front.

21. *Retreat.* — The ſignal of *Retreat*, (which will be often preceded by that of halt) is a general caution for the ſeveral words of execution to be given.

The

22. *Rally.* The ſignal to *Rally*, may be continued as long as it is neceſſary, and be repeated by the trumpets of ſuch parts of the body, as are concerned in the operation, till the end is anſwered.

Theſe ſignals are given by the chief commander only of the whole body that is exerciſed, whether of a ſquadron, regiment, brigade, or a line; they are not repeated by other commanders; they are addreſſed as cautions to the commanding officers of the parts of ſuch body, not to the men, nor is any movement, or alteration of movement, to take place, but in conſequence of the words, *march*, *trot*, *gallop*, &c. &c. rapidly and loudly repeated, the inſtant the trumpet caution is given.

The ſignals of movement are ſo ſhort, that the words of execution may nearly coincide with them.

Theſe ſignals for quick movement, may in regular exerciſe be given by a perſon who at the inſtant of giving them is ſtationary; but if he leads the body in motion, it is evident that in the gallop, the charge, and the halt, the voice, and the eye, can only determine, and regulate.

23. *Turn out Skirmiſhers.* This ſignal is made by the commander of the whole, if the whole is concerned, otherwiſe by the commander of ſuch part only as is to execute; if one, or two ſquadrons only, the voice will ſuffice—It may be a ſignal for purſuers after a charge.

24. *Call in Skirmiſhers.* This ſignal is made by the commander of the whole, and repeated by the commander of detachments, for the ſkirmiſhers to join their detachments; or it may originally come from the commander of the detachments. On the ſignal to *rally*, the whole join the bodies they were detached from.

25. *Skirmiſhers ceaſe firing.* This ſignal is made by the commander of the whole, and repeated (or originally made) by the commander of the ſupporting detachments, from which the ſkirmiſhers are advanced.

BUGLE HORN *DUTY* SOUNDINGS.

1. *Reveillé.*
2. *Rouſe, or turn out.*
3. *Dinner call.*
4. *Setting the watch.*

Theſe ſoundings are different in their notes from thoſe of the trumpet, but may be uſed under the ſame circumſtances.

BUGLE HORN *EXERCISE* SOUNDINGS.

5. *March.*
6. *Trot.*
7. *Gallop.*
8. *Charge.*
9. *Halt.*
10. *Retreat.*
11. *Rally.*
12. *Turn out Skirmiſhers.*
13. *Skirmiſhers ceaſe firing.*
14. *Call in Skirmiſhers.*

Theſe ſoundings are exactly the ſame as thoſe of the trumpet in the place of which the bugle horn may be occaſionally ſubſtituted.

THESE

THESE ſignals, of the trumpet and bugle horn, are meant in aid of the voice, but are by no means to be ſubſtituted for, or prevent the *ordered* words of execution.

The trumpet is always to be conſidered as the principal military inſtrument for theſe ſoundings. It more particularly belongs to the line, and the bugle horn to detached parties.

By Order of His Royal Highness

THE COMMANDER IN CHIEF.

WILLIAM FAWCETT,

ADJUTANT GENERAL.

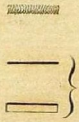
Printed for T. Egerton, at the Military Library, Whitehall,
by C. Roworth, Bell Yard, Fleet Street.

TABLE

explaining the

Several Figures, Marks &c.

The Positions are in general represented



The First

Intermediate

The last

Dotted Lines the March of different Bodies

Pointed Arrows the direction of the Movement

Blunted Arrows express the Markers necessary for the Line of march or formation

Round Dots express the position of the Leaders of Divisions

The Letters AB *&c denote different Movements in the same Figure*

The strong Line denotes the Front

The curved Arrow denote the wheel of a Division and the hand to which it wheels

Countermarch

Threes about wheel

Threes right wheel

Threes left wheel

A Regiment formed at Close Order.

Commanding Officer

Squadron Officer

Squadron Officer

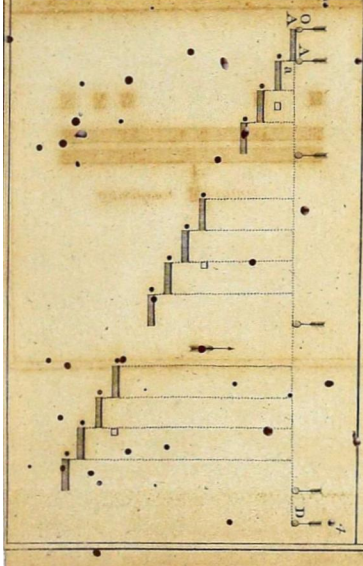
Squadron Officer

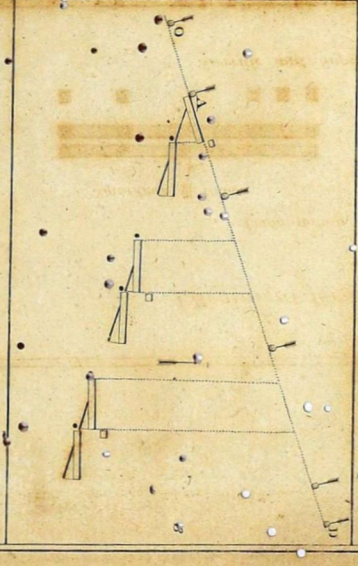
Squadron Officer

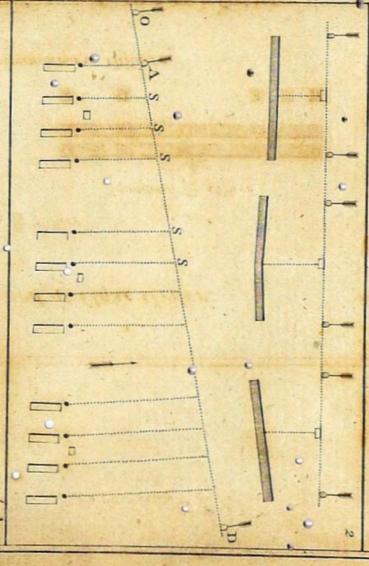
1st Rank

2d Rank

Serrefile and Supernumerary Officers







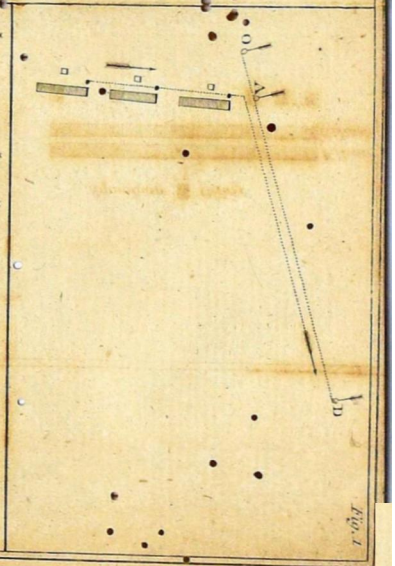
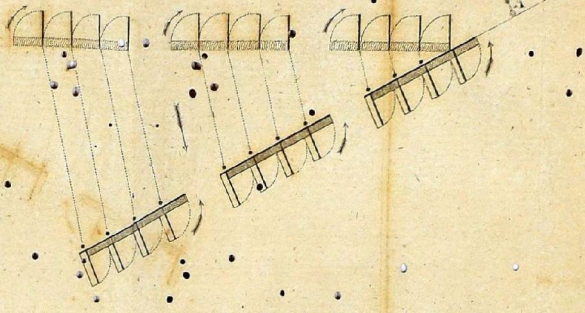
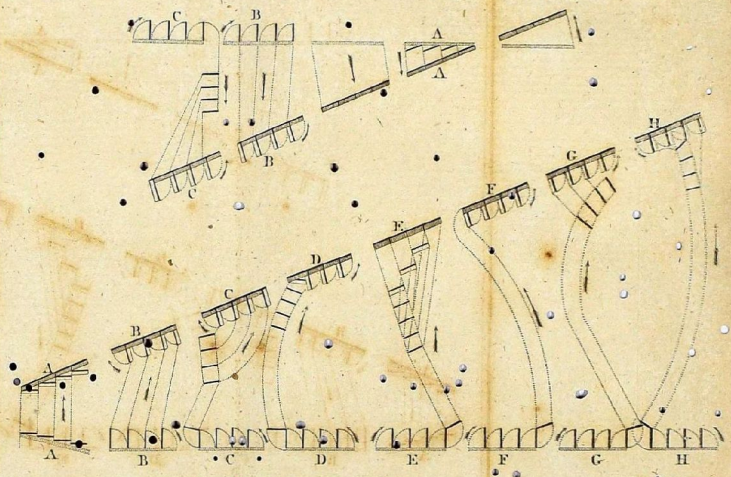
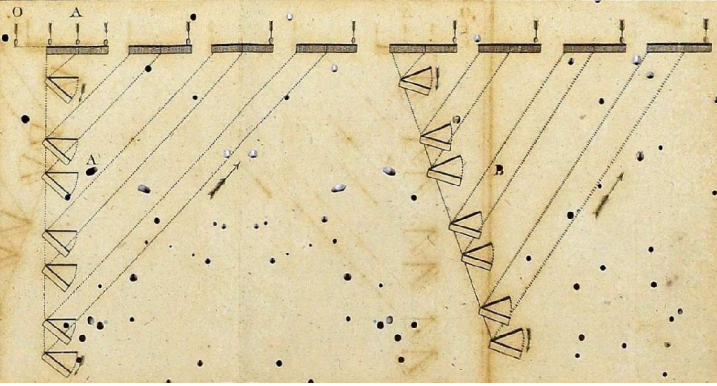
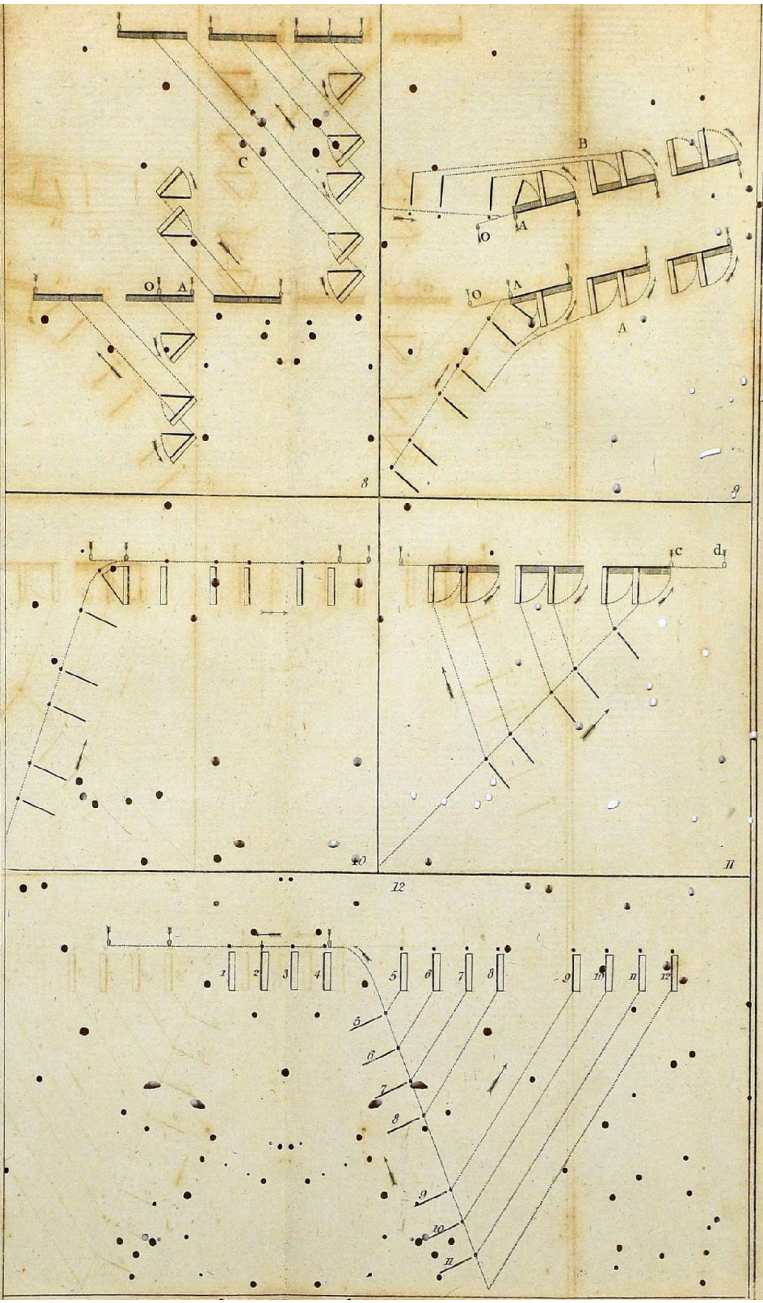


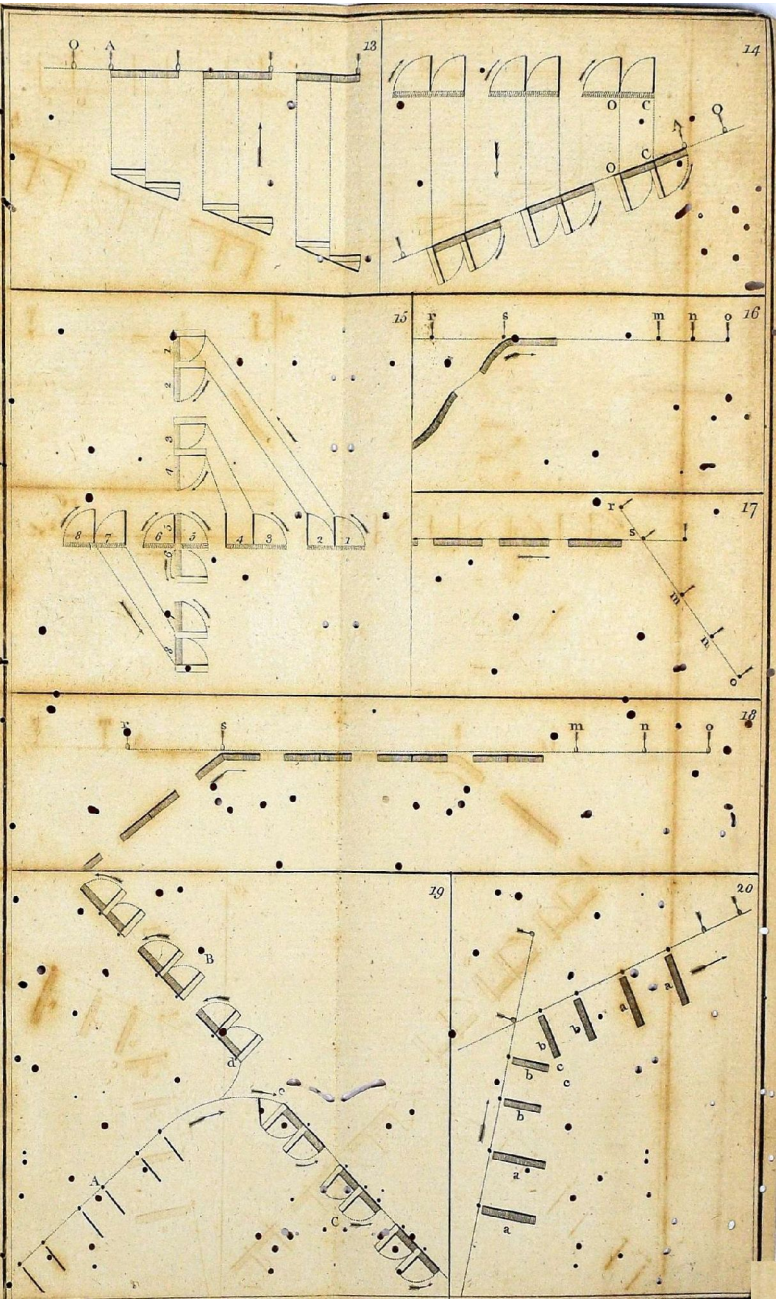
Fig. 1

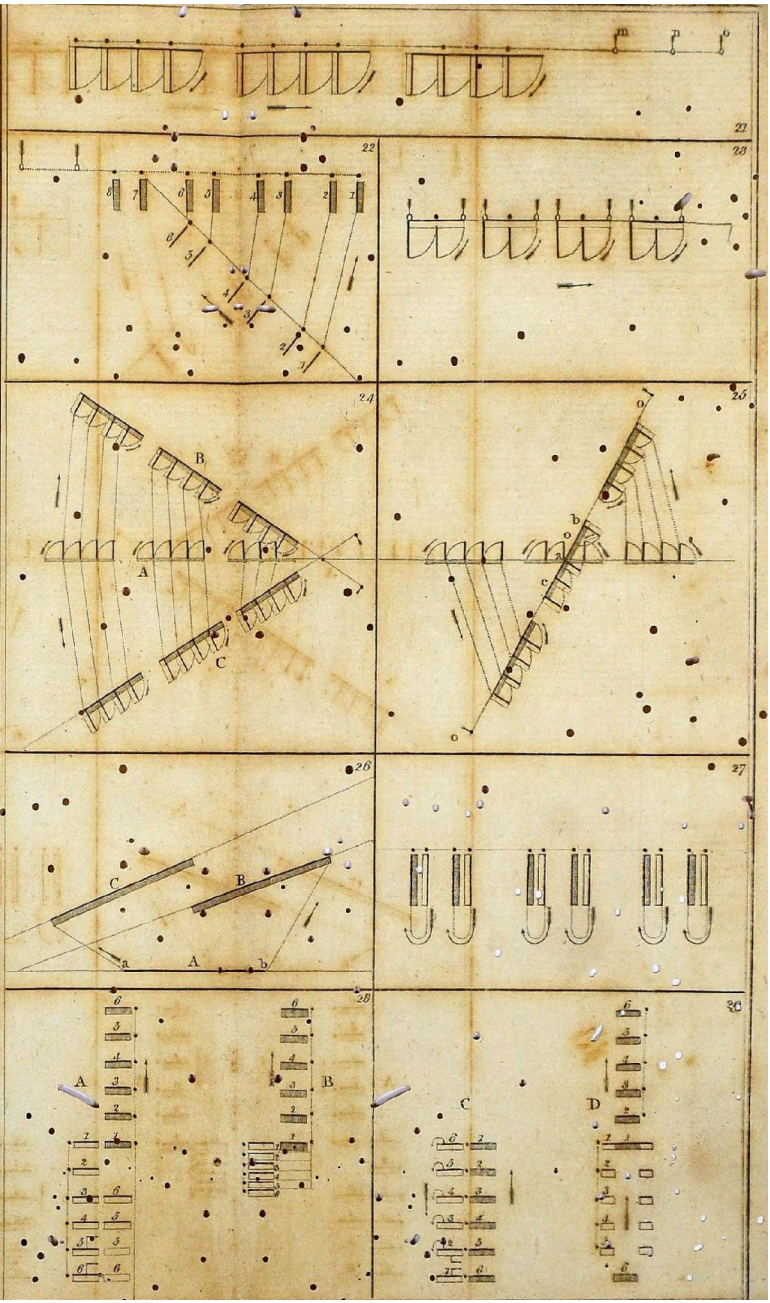

A
O

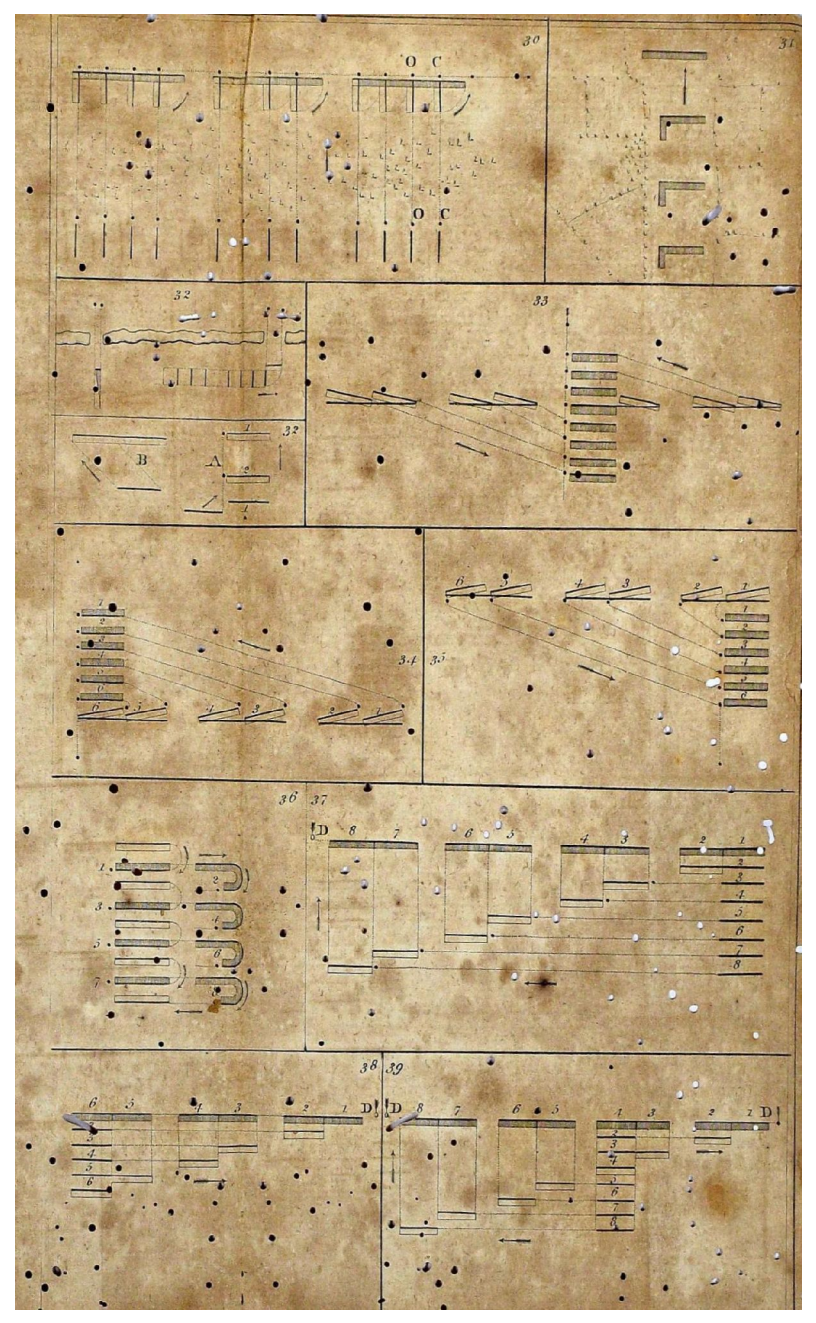

C
B
A
A
C
B
B
C
H
G
F
E
D
C
B
A
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H

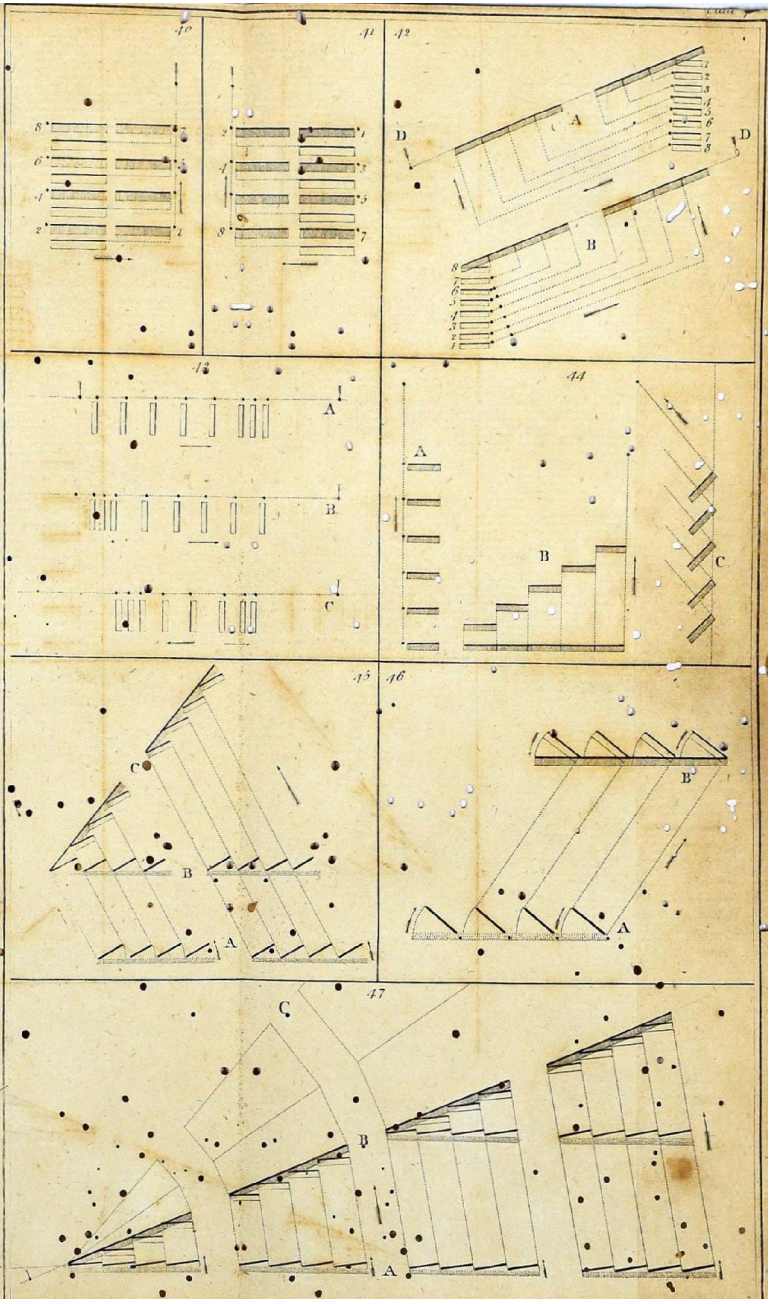

O
A
A
B
O

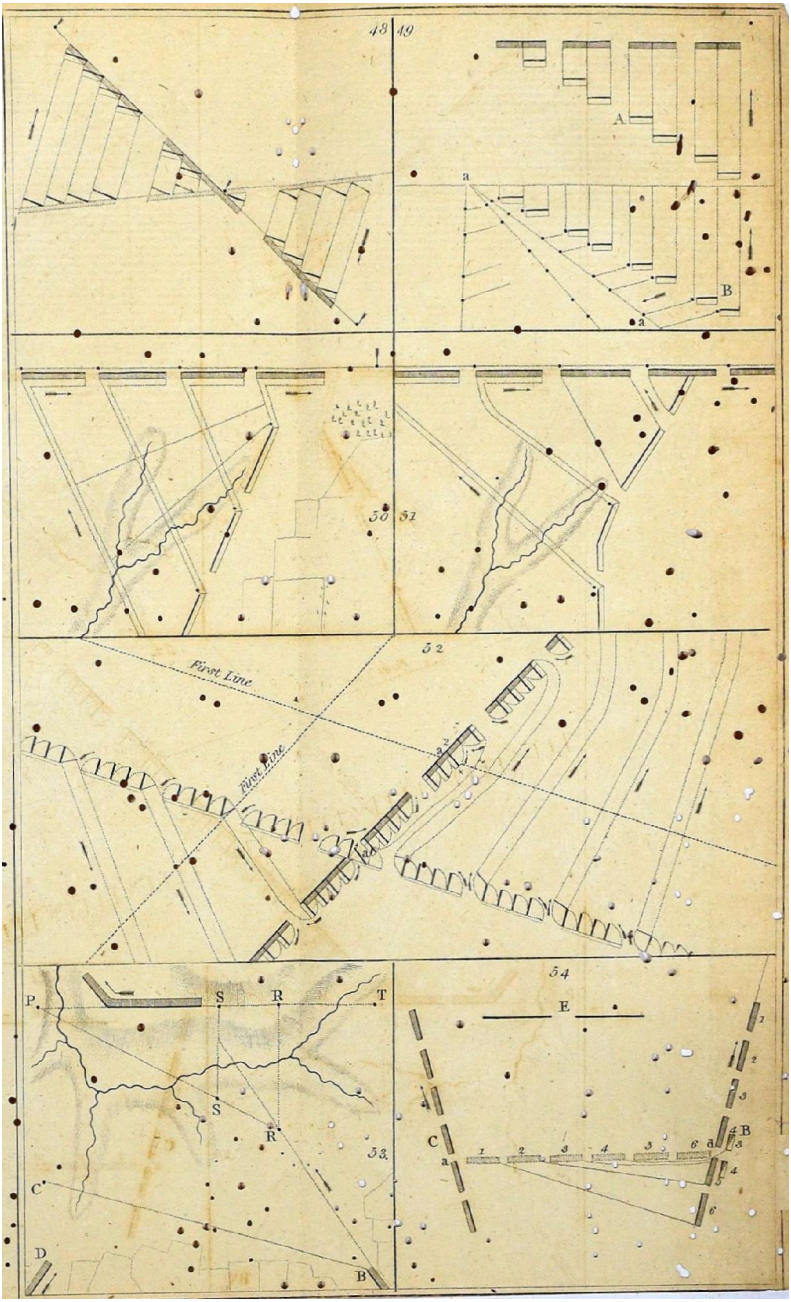

C
O
A
8
B
O
A
O
A
A
9
10
11
12
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
5
6
7
8
9
10
11

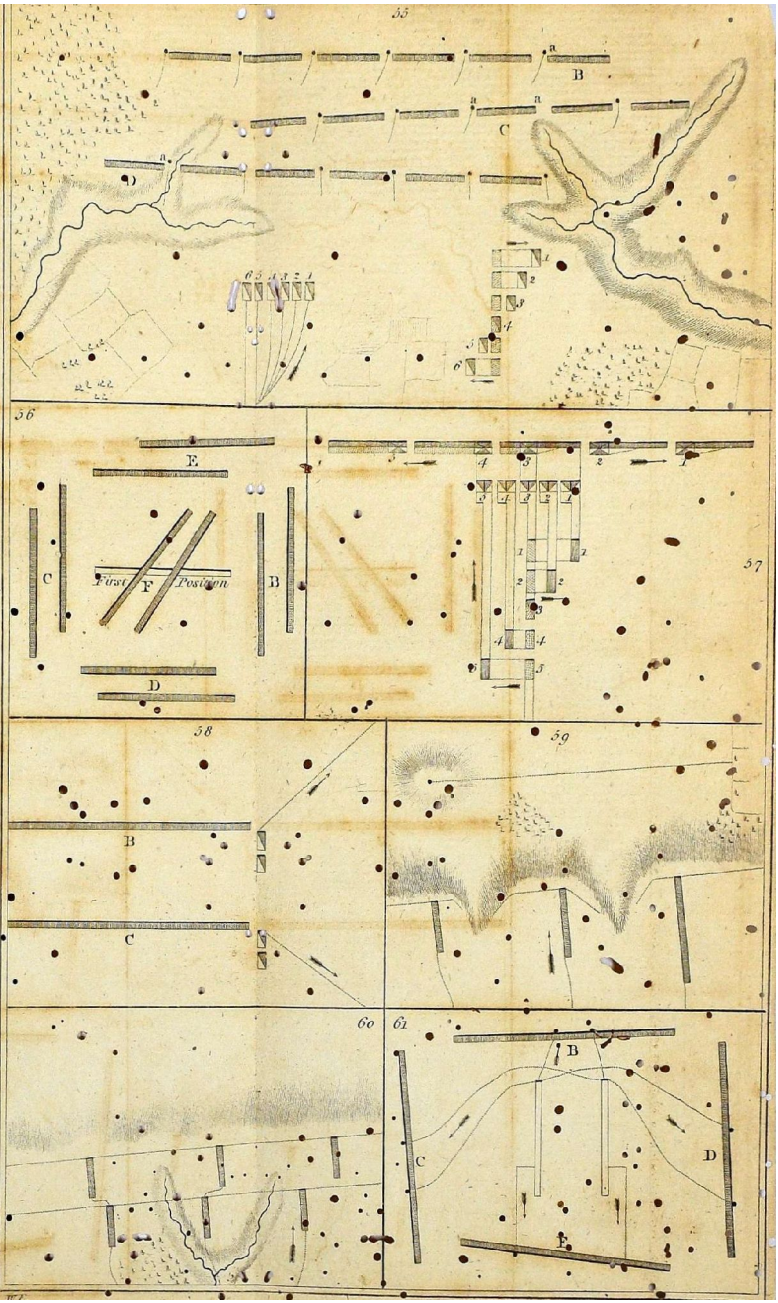

13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
A
B
C
O
r
s
m
n
o
a
b
c
d

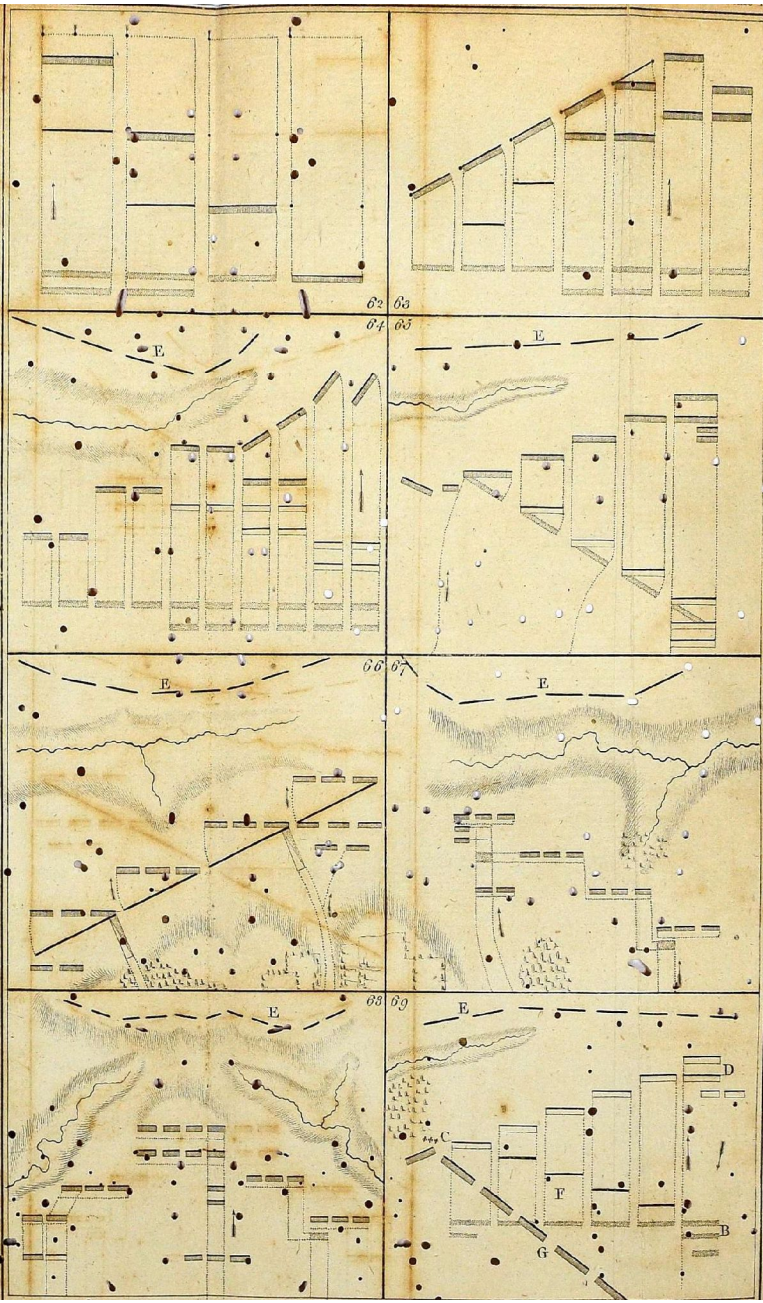

27
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
30
A
B
C
D
a
b

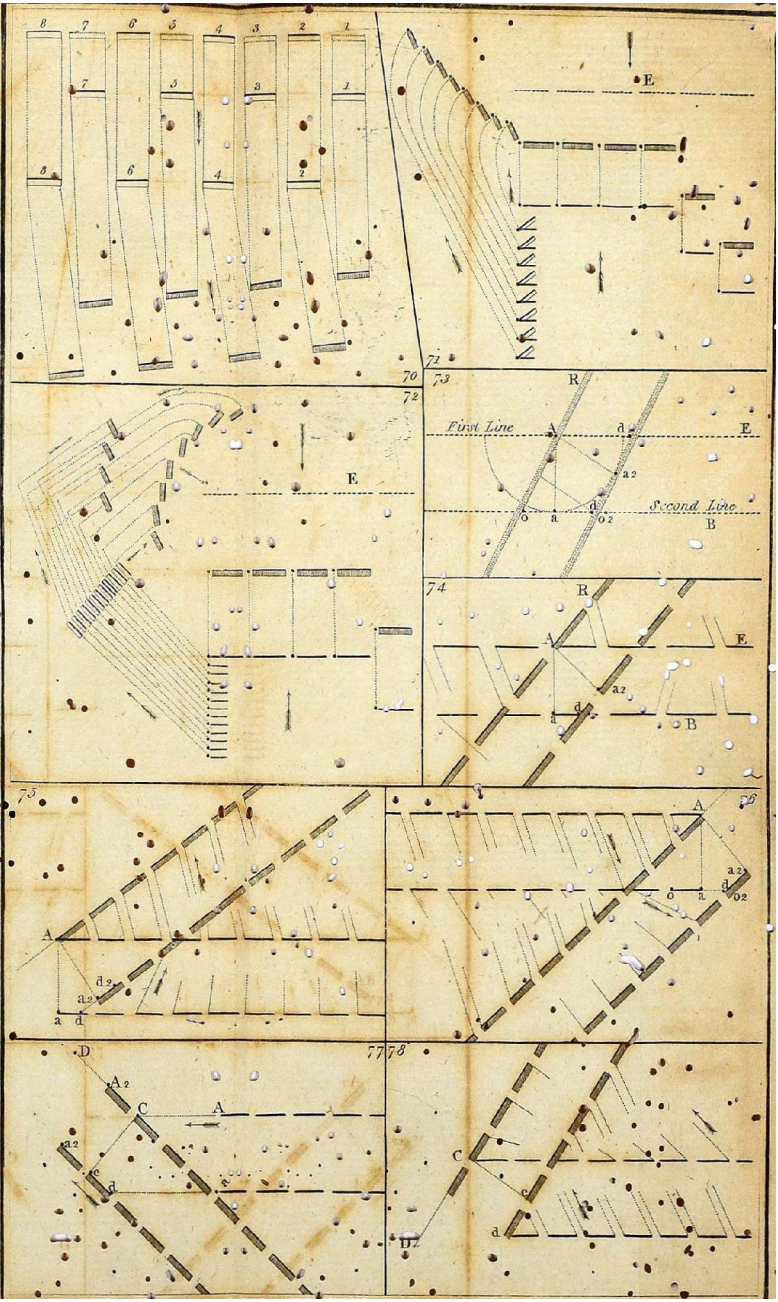

30
O C
O C
31
32
32
B
A
33
34
35
36
37
D
38
39
D
D

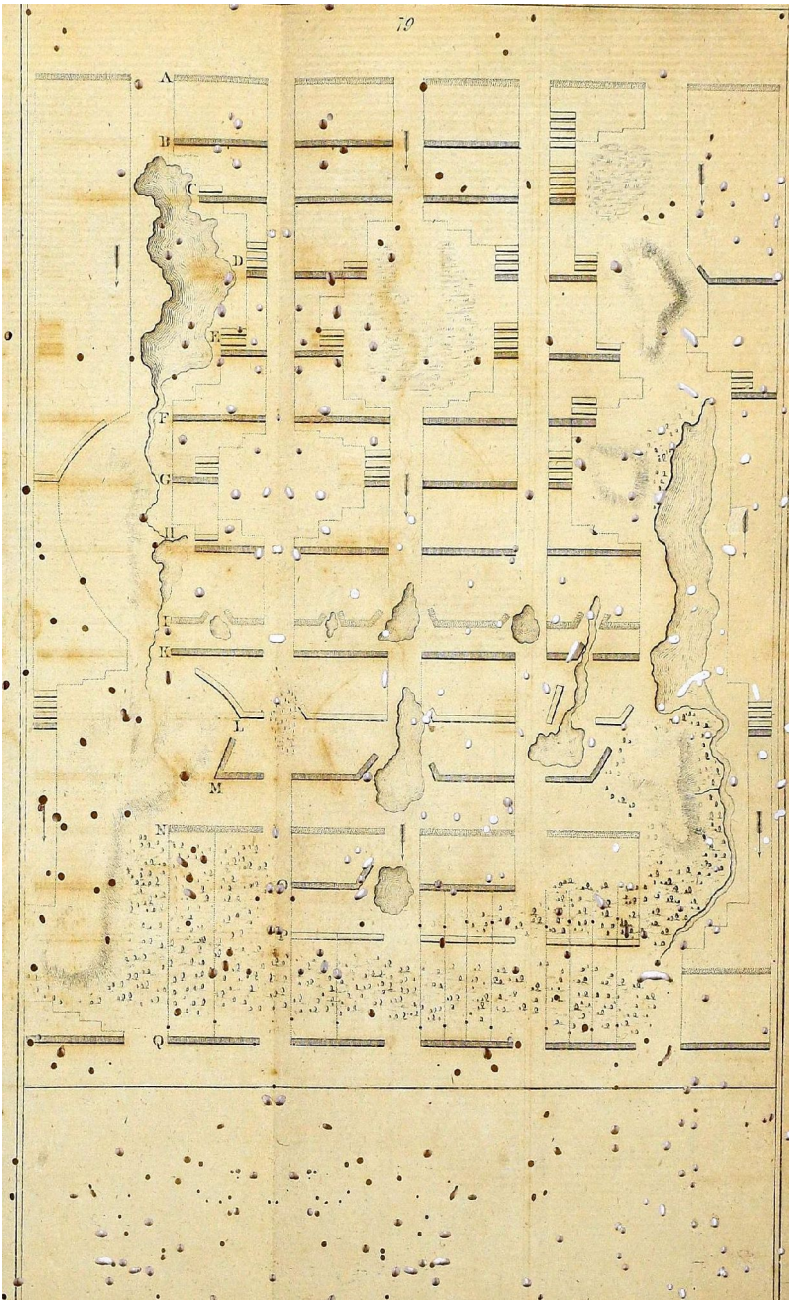
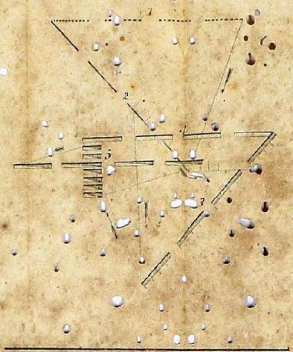
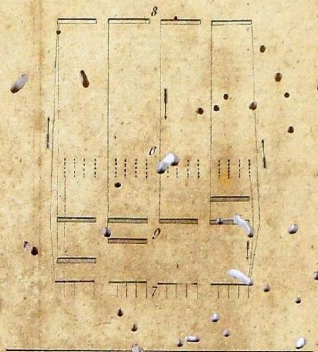
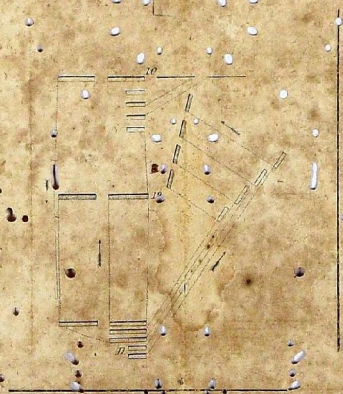
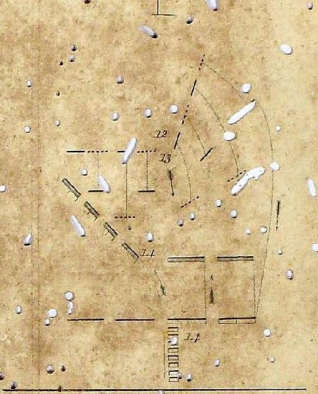
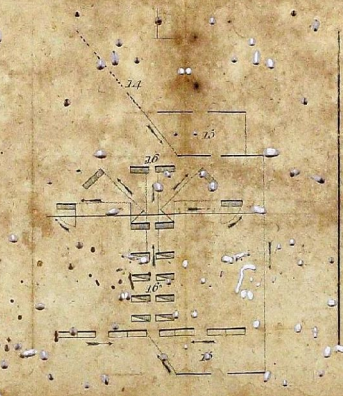
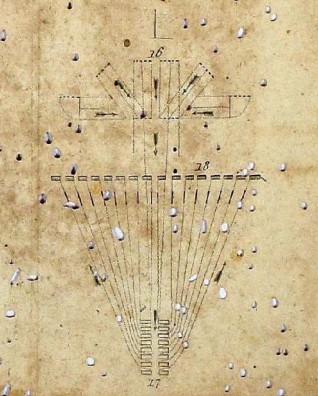

40
41
42
D
A
B
D
43
A
B
C
44
A
B
C
45
C
B
A
46
B
A
47
C
B
A


48 49
A
B
a
a
50 51
52
First Line
First Line
53
P
S
R
T
S
R
C
D
B
54
E
C
a
1
2
3
4
5
6
B


55
B
C
D
56
E
C
First
F
Position
B
D
57
58
B
C
59
60
61
B
C
D
E


62
63
64
E
65
E
66
E
67
E
68
E
69
E
D
C
F
B
G


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
E
71
70
72
73
R
First Line
A
d
E
a2
Second Line
o
a
d2
o2
B
74
75
76
77
78
D
A2
C
d2


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q

Inspection or Review.